

# KOREAN

**-TEXTS & EXERCISES-**

# **KOREAN**

**-TEXTS AND EXERCISES-**

**TEXTS**

# 1 인사

## IN THIS UNIT ...

- Basic Insa
- Reading *romanised* Hangeul
- Pronunciation



## INSA – SAYING THE RIGHT THING

For Koreans, as for all people, having the right phrase for the right occasion is the hallmark of politeness. Insa (in Hangeul it's written 인사) literally means *people business*, and might loosely be described as the art of greeting and talking casually to people in the proper way. In this first unit of the course, we learn a few basic Insa.

### 1 Basic Insa

#### Hello. I'm ...

When we extend a friendly greeting to people we usually say:

An-nyeong-ha-se-yo?  
(How are you?)

The standard reply is to give a positive answer, ie ne (yes), and ask the same question: Ne, an-nyeong-ha-se-yo?  
(Good, how are you?)

Note that an-nyeong-ha- means *to be at peace*. Thus, the literal translation of the exchange would be: *Are you at peace?* and *Yes, and are you at peace?*

To introduce ourselves, we say our name and then either -ye-yo or -i-e-yo (*I'm ...*, *it's ...* etc). We use -ye-yo if our name ends in a vowel sound, and -i-e-yo if it ends in a consonant sound. Note that we are talking about *sounds* not *spelling*. See how people in the picture identify themselves.

As you would expect, your name may have to be modified, slightly or dramatically, according to the Korean sound system. This modification may have an impact on the choice between -ye-yo and



-i-e-yo. Here are some notes. First, with names that end in an *r* sound, eg *Barber*, *Miller*, *Taylor*, etc, Koreans don't pronounce the final *r*. These names are then seen to end in a vowel sound within the Korean sound system. This is why Kylie Walker in the picture chooses -ye-yo and says: Ka-il-li wo-keo-ye-yo (*not* Ka-il-li wo-keo-r-i-e-yo).

What happens if your name ends in an *l* sound? You will use -i-e-yo since your name ends in a consonant, but the final *l* sound in your name will be changed to *r*. Suppose your name is Debbie Bell. You will then introduce yourself in Korean: De-bi ber-i-e-yo (*not* De-bi bel-i-e-yo).

When reading foreign names that end in a consonant sound such as *p*, *b*, *t*, *d*, *k* and *g* (linguists call them *non-nasal stops*), Koreans generally add a schwa-like vowel sound, represented here as *eu*, to the final consonant. Names such as *Hart* and *Hind* will be pronounced as Ha-teu and Ha-in-deu in Korean, which of course means that they are to be treated as names ending in a vowel. Thus, we say: Ha-teu-ye-yo and Ha-in-deu-ye-yo (*not* Hat-i-e-yo for instance).

The same goes for names ending in *s*, *f*, *th* and their voiced counterparts (linguists call all these *fricative* sounds). If your name is Harris, you will say: Hae-ri-seu-ye-yo.

With names such as *Bush*, *Dash* and *George* (the final consonant of each is called a *palato-alveolar* sound), Koreans add the vowel *i* at the end. Thus if your name is George, you will say: Jo-ji-ye-yo.

Ask your instructor, if your name is outside these notes.

### Pleased to meet you.

When we meet people for the first time, we can also say: Ban-gap-sseum-ni-da (*Pleased to meet you*). The literal meaning is *I'm pleased*. Here the reason why you are pleased (ie *to meet you*) is implied.

The usual reply would be to say *ne* (yes) and echo the expression: Ne, ban-gap-sseum-ni-da (*Pleased to meet you, too*), which means *Yes, and I'm pleased too*.



### Welcome. Come in.

You're now visiting a Korean family.

Upon arrival, you'll be greeted by the family with an expression such as: Eo-seo o-se-yo (*Welcome*). Here the literal meaning is *Come (in) quickly*. This may sound pushy, but it is an indication that your host and hostess are so happy to see you that they want you to come in without delay.

Another common welcome is: Deur-eo-o-se-yo (*Come in*).





## Good-bye. See you again.

When someone is leaving, we say: An-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo (*Good-bye: literally, Please go in peace*).

But if it is we who are leaving, we say: An-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo (*Good-bye: literally, Please stay in peace*) to whoever is staying behind.

We can of course add: Tto man-na-yo (*See you again: literally, We meet again*).



## Sorry I'm late.

For minor indiscretions, we usually say:

Mi-an-ham-ni-da (*I'm sorry: literally, I'm upsetting things*).

To respond, we say: Gwaen-chan-a-yo (*It's OK*).

To show our appreciation, we say: Gam-sa-ham-ni-da or Go-map-sseum-ni-da (*Thank you: literally, I'm grateful*). The two expressions are interchangeable.

It might be useful at this stage to know how to apologise to your teacher for being moderately late to Korean language class. This is not to encourage you to be late! But if you happen to be late, say: Neuj-eo-seo mi-an-ham-ni-da (*Sorry I'm late*). Here, Neuj- means *being late*, and -eo-seo *because*.



In the picture, upon the student's apology, the friendly Korean teacher says *It's OK*, and offers a seat by saying: An-jeu-se-yo (*Take a seat*). The student then says *Thank you*.

It is part of Western etiquette to acknowledge even minor services, such as the dispensing of tickets or even the giving back of change, with a brief *Thank you* or equivalent. By contrast in Korea, expressions of this type are not used as often. They are usually reserved for acts of individual thoughtfulness, rather than actions performed as part of one's job.

## 2 Romanisation

As you probably already know, Korean is written in its own very simple, and ingenious, phonetic script called Hangeul. However, as a transitory means, Korean expressions in the first lesson have been written in the English alphabet.

The process of writing Hangeul in the Roman alphabet is known as *romanisation*. There are a few romanisation systems available, but the one that we follow here is ‘The Revised Romanization of Korean’, or RRK, developed in 2000 by the National Academy of the Korean Language in the Republic of Korea. Currently, many street signs in Korea are given not just in Hangeul but also in the Roman Alphabet, and it is the RRK that is predominantly adopted here.

However, you should not take romanisation to be the same as spelling in English. This is because the way words are spelt in English does not reflect the way they are actually pronounced. For example, the *a* in *arm*, *dare*, *dame* and *dam* is pronounced differently in each case. Romanisation is a convention whereby we standardise pronunciation by assigning constant values to each letter. Within RRK, as we explain below in more detail, the letter *a* is consistently used to represent the English *a* sound as in *arm*; it is not used for any other sounds which the letter *a* may represent in English.

Another warning is that, while Hangeul renders the sounds of Korean in a remarkably accurate way, no script can ever fully describe the actual sounds of any given language. For instance, the Hangeul letter ㄷ is pronounced as *d* when it occurs between two voiced sounds, and as *t* elsewhere. RRK romanises the ㄷ letter as *d* when it is followed by a vowel, and *t* when it is followed by another consonant or when it forms the final sound of a word. This works well, except when the ㄷ letter occurs sentence-initially and is followed by a vowel. This is a situation where the ㄷ letter is romanised as *d* but is pronounced as *t*. Thus, when you say: Ban-gap-sseum-ni-da, you should pronounce the underlined *d* as *d*, but when you say: Deur-eo-o-se-yo, you should pronounce the underlined *d* as *t*.

## 3 RRK and pronunciation

Generally speaking, the sounds of Korean will be familiar to the English speaker, and thus pronunciation should not be a serious problem. We shall look at pronunciation more closely in subsequent lessons, however please note the following points.

### Notes for Consonants

In the list below all the Korean consonants are given in Korean alphabetical order.

All the consonants appearing in RRK are basically the same as in English.

A doubled consonant, that is, *pp*, *tt*, *ss*, *jj* or *kk*, indicates tensed pronunciation. In English tensed consonants do not constitute separate sound categories for distinguishing between words, but tensed consonants do exist. For example, the *p*, *t* and *k* sounds in *s* clusters are tensed consonants – such as *spot*, *stop* and *sky*. Ask your instructor, if you are not clear what tensed pronunciation entails.

By convention, *s* and *ss* in RRK shall be pronounced respectively as *sh* and ‘tensed’ *sh* (ie *sh* with a stronger hiss) if they are followed by *i* or *y*. Thus, when you read *si*, for instance, you should not read it in the same way of naming the English letter *c* but as *she*.

As briefly mentioned above, *b*, *d*, *g* and *j* are pronounced the same as in English, except when they occur sentence-initially. In this case they are pronounced as *p*, *t*, *k* and *ch*, respectively.

Also, note that Korean *r* is a ‘flap’ *r*. Although replacing *r* with English *r* does not bring about a meaning change, you should know *r* is produced by a single, quick flap of the tongue against the alveolar ridge – the inward projection of the gums between the upper teeth and the hard palate. Ask your instructor for a demonstration.

Consonants		Vowels	
g		a	as in <i>part</i>
kk	as in <i>sky</i>	ae	as in <i>cable</i>
n		ya	as in <i>yard</i>
d		yae	as in <i>yabby</i>
tt	as in <i>stop</i>	eo	as in <i>pot</i>
r/l		e	as in <i>pet</i>
m		yeo	as in <i>yonder</i>
b		ye	as in <i>yet</i>
pp	as in <i>spot</i>	o	as in <i>port</i>
s		wa	as in <i>wonder</i>
ss		wae	as in <i>wag</i>
ng	as in <i>sing</i>	oe	as in <i>wet</i>
j		yo	as in <i>your</i>
jj		u	as in <i>do</i>
ch		wo	as in <i>wobble</i>
k		we	as in <i>wet</i>
t		wi	as in <i>weeds</i>
p		yu	as in <i>few</i>
h		eu	as in <i>urn</i>
		ui	Say <i>Ernie</i> without the <i>n</i> (and without moving the lips)
		i	as in <i>feet</i>

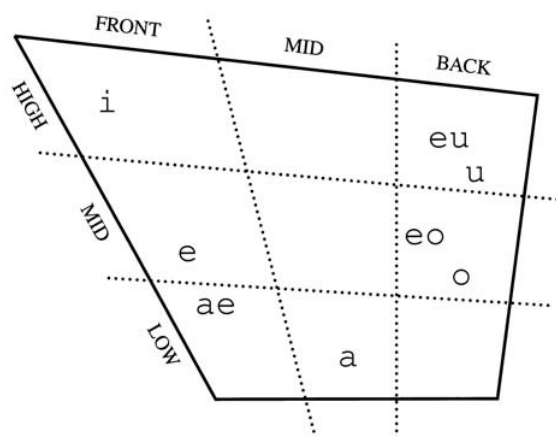
### Notes for Vowels

In the list above all the Korean vowels are given with approximate Australian English equivalents. We suggest you treat the equivalents as a preliminary guide only. In order to develop accurate pronunciation, pay close attention to your instructor and to the language tapes or CDs that accompany this course. The list is in Korean alphabetical order.

There are a total of twenty-one different vowel symbols in Hangeul. But note that, in the spoken language, only eight vowel sounds occur. Some of these eight vowel sounds combine with either *w* or *y* (the semi-vowels) to form composite sounds.

Note also that the distinction between *oe* and *we* is not obvious in standard spoken Korean.

Some people find it easier to relate to vowels if they know the approximate point of articulation in the mouth. Next is a common figure used by linguists and language teachers to demonstrate this. It is a cutaway side view of the mouth. The marked zones indicate the relative positions of the highest point of the tongue when a speaker is properly pronouncing the single Korean vowels indicated. For example, when you pronounce *i*, it is a high, front vowel – the point at which articulation occurs is high up and in the front of the mouth. On the other hand, *u* is a high, back vowel.



Note that *u* and *o* are pronounced with the lips rounded



## More Notes

The dash symbol, ‘-’, in the romanisation stands for what we loosely call syllable boundary within an independent expression. (Strictly speaking, this is not part of RRK conventions. In RRK the usage of the dash symbol is somewhat arbitrary. It can be inserted, for example, where there is the possibility of confusion in pronunciation.) Broadly stated, the rhythmic structure of a Korean sentence is such that you can take one syllable to have one beat. Thus, when you practise reading, eg An-nyeong-ha-se-yo?, it might be an idea to clap five times while saying the whole sentence.

Koreans use punctuation marks, such as ‘,’, ‘.’, and ‘?’, in very much the same way as you do in English. They also use a space as you do in English after an independent expression, eg a word. All these are reflected in the Romanisation system. (Note that suffixes or particles such as case markers are all attached to the stem or the noun concerned in Korean, that is, no space is given between the stem and suffixes and between the noun and particles. We will study this part of grammar in more detail later in the course.)

## 4 More expressions

Here are some more Insa expressions and some classroom instructions you may hear your instructor using. They’re not intended for you to learn by heart in this unit (some of them we study more closely in Unit 7), but their use can help to give a more Korean ‘feel’ to classroom procedure.

또 뵈겠습니다.	Hope to see you again.	Tto bwoep-gess-sseum-ni-da.
천만에요.	You’re welcome.	Cheon-man-e-yo.
네./예.	Yes.	Ne./Ye.
아니요.	No.	A-ni-yo.
선생님 ...	Teacher, ...	Seon-saeng-nim ...
... (Your Name) + 씨	Mr/Ms ...	... + ssi
잘 들으세요.	Listen closely.	Jal deur-eu-se-yo.
따라 하세요.	Repeat.	Tta-ra ha-se-yo.
읽으세요.	Read.	Ilg-eu-se-yo.
쓰세요.	Write (it).	Sseu-se-yo.
질문 있어요?	Any questions?	Jil-mun iss-eo-yo?
아시겠어요?	Do you get it?	A-si-gess-eo-yo?
네, 알겠어요.	Yes, I get it.	Ne, al-gess-eo-yo.
아니요, 잘 모르겠어요.	No, I don’t get it.	A-ni-yo, jal mo-reu-gess-eo-yo.
해 보세요.	Try (it).	Hae bo-se-yo.
다 같이 ...	All together ...	Da gach-i ...
다시 한 번 ...	Once again ..., Once more ...	Da-si han beon ...
잘 하셨습니다.	Well done!	Jal ha-syeoss-eo-yo.
천천히 ...	(Please speak) slowly.	Cheon-cheon-hi ...
잊어버렸어요.	I’ve forgotten.	Ij-eo-beo-ryeoss-eo-yo.

## 2 한글 (1)

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Reading and writing Hangeul
- More about pronunciation

### HANGEUL – THE KOREAN ALPHABET

When you finish studying the next two units you should know how to read and write words using Hangeul – slowly at first, but getting faster and more accurate all the time. Meanwhile, as you go through this unit, always remember that Hangeul is a highly consistent, phonetic script, and that most people find it easy to learn and interesting to use.



#### 1 Hangeul: Introduction

One of the most exciting and important events in modern Korean history was the 1988 Seoul Olympics.

When the 150 countries in the 1988 Seoul Olympics marched into the Olympic Stadium for the opening ceremony, they did so in alphabetical order – Korean alphabetical order. Look at the examples of countries' names written in Hangeul and see if you can read them using the guide below.

ㄱ	g, k	ㅏ	a
ㄴ	n	ㅓ	[ ], ng
ㅇ	i	ㅕ	m
ㅂ	b, p	ㅖ	j
ㄷ	r, l	ㅗ	u
ㅡ	eu	ㅛ	o
ㅜ	s	ㅜ	t
ㅑ	e	ㅋ	k
ㅓ	ae	ㅌ	d, t
ㅎ	h		

Note that when written at the beginning of a syllable, ㅇ is a 'dummy' – it has no phonetic value at all. When written at the end of a syllable, however, it is pronounced 'ng'.

가나 GHANA

(Ga-na)

가이아나 GUYANA

(Ga-i-a-na)

감비아 THE GAMBIA

(Gam-bi-a)

나이지리아 NIGERIA

(Na-i-ji-ri-a)

루마니아 ROMANIA

(Ru-ma-ni-a)

브라질 BRAZIL

(Beu-ra-jil)

오스트레일리아 AUSTRALIA

(O-seu-teu-re-il-li-a)

캐나다 CANADA

(Kae-na-da)

타일랜드 THAILAND

(Ta-il-laen-deu)

홍콩 CHINESE HONG KONG

(Hong-kong)

Looking at these examples can tell us a lot about the way Hangeul is written. Firstly, notice how it is written in syllables, not in single, individually-spaced letters as in English. For example, if we were to write Chinese *Hong Kong* according to the individually-spaced letter style of the English alphabet, it would look like:  $\text{ㅎ ㄱ ㅇ ㅋ ㄱ ㅇ}$  (Hong Kong), whereas in the Hangeul system it is actually written:  $\text{홍콩}$ . On the other hand, if we were to write *Hong Kong* in Hangeul letters but according to the conventions of written English, it would look like this:  $\begin{matrix} \text{H} & \text{K} \\ \text{ㅇ} & \text{ㅇ} \\ \text{ng} & \text{ng} \end{matrix}$ .

The shaping of Hangeul was influenced by culture as well as linguistics. Hangeul was originally devised to complement the use of Chinese characters, and in Chinese a single character represented a single syllable. So the Hangeul characters were not written in their individual spaces, but were grouped in syllables. If you want to know more about this, read the Cultural Notes on Page 13.

Secondly, each Hangeul syllable consists of a vowel with optional surrounding consonants. Look again at the example of *Hong Kong*. Both syllables have a central vowel, with front and rear consonants.

	Front Consonant	Vowel	Rear Consonant
1st Syllable	H	o	ng
2nd Syllable	K	o	ng

In this case, both front and rear consonants are present, but this is not always the case. For example, the Korean word for *child* is a-i. Although it has only two letters, both are vowels, and so the word is written in two syllables.

	Front Consonant	Vowel	Rear Consonant
1st Syllable	–	a	–
2nd Syllable	–	i	–

Thirdly, note from the examples at the beginning of this unit that where there is no initial consonant, the letter ㅇ indicates this. For example, look at the examples of *Guyana* and *Nigeria*.

가 이 아 나                      나 이 지 리 아  
Ga- i- a- na                      Na- i- ji- ri- a

The reason for this is again related to the fact that Hangeul is written in syllables. If a syllable has no initial consonant then we indicate that by inserting an initial *zero* consonant. Thus when we write the Korean word for *child* (a-i) it comes out as:  $\text{아-ㅇ}$ .

If you are not clear at this stage on the terminology *consonant*, *vowel*, and *syllable*, it might be wise to stop and consult a suitable reference book.

Yet another characteristic of Hangeul almost too obvious to be worth pointing out is that it transcribes the Korean language, and so when it transcribes foreign sounds it transcribes them as the Korean ear hears them. Thus in the examples above, some vowel sounds might appear different from those that the native English speaker might expect.

One particular point of difference is that the Korean language doesn't have many clusters of consonants. Thus, in a foreign-language transcriptions, clusters of consonants are made to look and sound 'less foreign' by inserting the vowel *eu* between consonants. In this process *st-* becomes *seu-t-*, and *str-* becomes *seu-teu-r-* and so on. Note, for example, how *Australia* is written in Hangeul.

오 스 트 레 일 리 아  
O- seu- teu- re- il- li- a

## 2 Writing Hangeul

### The vowels

For most people the easiest way to learn Hangeul is through practice in writing while reading aloud. It might be helpful to use a squared paper – such as graph paper.

The table below shows the prescribed stroke order for writing all the Hangeul vowels, listed in Korean alphabetical order. Check the romanisation pronunciation given in Unit 1 (see Page 6).

ㅏ	a	ㅏ	ㅑ		ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅗ	ㅛ	ㅜ	ㅠ
ㅗ	ae	ㅗ	ㅑ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅗ	ㅛ	ㅜ	ㅠ	
ㅑ	ya	ㅑ	ㅑ	ㅓ	ㅕ					
ㅓ	yae	ㅑ	ㅑ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅓ				
ㅕ	eo	ㅕ	ㅕ							
ㅗ	e	ㅕ	ㅕ	ㅓ	ㅕ					
ㅑ	yeo	ㅕ	ㅕ	ㅓ	ㅕ					
ㅓ	ye	ㅕ	ㅕ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅓ				
ㅛ	o	ㅛ	ㅛ							
ㅕ	wa	ㅛ	ㅛ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅓ				
ㅓ	wae	ㅛ	ㅛ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅓ				
		ㅓ								
ㅓ	oe	ㅓ	ㅓ	ㅓ						
ㅕ	yo	ㅓ	ㅓ	ㅓ						
ㅕ	u	ㅕ	ㅕ							
ㅓ	wo	ㅕ	ㅕ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅓ				
ㅓ	we	ㅕ	ㅕ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅓ				
		ㅓ								
ㅓ	wi	ㅕ	ㅕ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅓ				
ㅕ	yu	ㅕ	ㅕ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅓ				
ㅕ	eu	ㅕ								
ㅓ	ui	ㅕ	ㅓ							
ㅓ	i	ㅓ								

Note the following points on pronunciation.

- ㅓ (ae) and ㅓ (e): the distinction between ㅓ and ㅓ is being lost in standard spoken Korean.
- ㅓ (yae) and ㅓ (ye): the distinction between ㅓ and ㅓ is likewise being lost in standard spoken Korean.
- ㅓ (wae), ㅓ (oe) and ㅓ (we): as a result of loss of distinction between ㅓ and ㅓ, standard spoken Korean does not normally distinguish between ㅓ, ㅓ and ㅓ. We have learnt already (see Page 6) that the distinction between ㅓ (oe) and ㅓ (we) does not obtain in standard spoken Korean.
- ㅓ (ui) can be pronounced ui, i or e, depending on context. We'll learn more about this in a later unit.

The nineteen consonants are shown below with their stroke order.

Note that 丌, 𠀀 and 𠀁 can also be written as ス, 𠀀 and え. In this case their prescribed stroke order will be as follows.

ス	j	フ	ス		
𠀀	jj	フ	ス	𠀀	𠀀
え	ch	ゝ	ㇿ	え	

Each Hangeul vowel letter consists of a basic long *vertical* or *horizontal* stroke, from which other shorter strokes are drawn. On the basis of their shapes, we can group all the Hangeul vowel letters into three groups as follows.

The grouping is important because when consonant and vowel letters are placed together to form a Hangeul syllable, their proportions within the writing square vary according to the shape of the vowel. The basic principle is this: a Hangeul syllable always begins with a consonant letter. When the vowel in the given syllable is vertical,

© G Shin 2006

**Vertical Vowel**Example: a-(i) = *child*

Further Examples:

시	하	세	예	서	히
si	ha	se	ye	seo	hi

**Horizontal Vowel**
 Example:  
 O-(seu-teu-re-il-li-a)  
 = *Australia*


Further Examples:

요	또	으	우	료	휴
yo	tto	eu	u	ryo	hyu

**Mixed Vowel**Example: Gwa-(il) = *fruits*

Further Examples:

워	의	쇄	뒤	뭉	괘
wo	ui	swae	dwi	mwo	gwe

A Hangeul syllable can have up to two consonants *after* the vowel. The position for the syllable-final consonant(s) is the lower portion of the writing-square, below the combination of the syllable-initial consonant and the vowel. Here are some examples.

**Vertical with a Final Consonant**

Example: Han-(geul)

Further Examples:

인	상	반	갑	앗	찰
in	sang	ban	gap	anj	chanh

**Horizontal with a Final Consonant**

Example: (Han)-geul

Further Examples:

들	눅	습	올	존	슨
deul	neuj	seup	ol	jon	seun

**Mixed with a Final Consonant**
 Example:  
 Gwaen-(cha-na-yo)  
 = *It's OK.*

Further Examples:

괘	원	될	권	웬	윈
gwai	oen	doel	gwon	wen	win



### 3 Cultural Notes: Hangeul

The Korean alphabet is known as Hangeul (literally: *Korean Writing*). The background to its invention is in itself an interesting story, and is also important for understanding its principles. Understanding why something was designed helps us understand how it actually works.

Hangeul was first developed early in the 15th century under the active guidance of King Sejong (reigned 1418–1450). This was at a time when the written language of Korea was Chinese. Chinese writing possessed immense prestige as the instrument of a sophisticated system of government, and had been adopted and adapted from China over hundreds of years: to abandon it would have been unthinkable. Hangeul was designed, as far as modern scholars can tell, not to replace Chinese characters but to complement them.

Chinese characters needed to be complemented because there were areas where they were ineffective – the most important of these being the simple and accurate representation of the sounds of the Korean language: native Korean place names, personal names, onomatopoeia, and song transcriptions, etc. For many centuries, these areas had been represented by an elaborate tradition of using Chinese characters for their phonetic values. But for reasons that are still not entirely clear, this system had largely fallen into disuse by Sejong's time. Moreover, the acquisition of Chinese character literacy was not open to all, or even to many. This resulted in people without an inability to read Chinese being beyond the effective reach of government.

By now the Korean language contained many Chinese words with Koreanised pronunciation. Language used in government, law and administration was full of these words. If people could not be taught to read and write Chinese characters, they could at least be helped to understand them when heard, if a simple phonetic script to represent Chinese characters could be developed. Thus it was an important function of Hangeul to give people who were illiterate in Chinese a simple phonetic script with which they could pronounce words and, upon pronouncing them, grasp their meaning.

This was why when Hangeul was first unveiled in 1446 after many years of study and deliberation it was called not 'Han-geul' (which is a modern name) but 'Hun-min-jeong-eum' – *Correct Sounds for the Instruction of the People*. In support of this purpose, the script was simply written, almost completely phonetic, and easy to remember. Interestingly, however, what has arrested the attention of countless scholars since then is the astounding ease with which this simplicity is capable of rendering clearly, and unambiguously, something as intricate as the sound system of the Korean language.

However, while the traditional Korean social order survived (with its systems of education and government so firmly founded on Neo-Confucian principles), Hangeul was barely used. But, as the old order fell into final decay late last century and a strong push for modernisation began, Hangeul came into its own as a very effective instrument of modern mass literacy. The Korean language had, of course, evolved a good deal over a time span of five hundred years, but the principles of Hangeul were so clear, simple and well conceived that they could be adapted readily to modern needs. In fact the Hangeul symbols in use today, both in the Republic of Korea and in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, are surprisingly identical to those first developed under Sejong.

For students of Korean, the existence of Hangeul, a simple and effective means of writing Korean, makes transcription of Korean into European alphabet letters superfluous. Thus, although a number of systems of Hangeul romanisation exist, for language students they are only really useful as transitory aids. There is really no substitution for being able to read the Hangeul script itself, and students are strongly encouraged to devote attention to this from the outset. Hangeul is essentially phonetic, very consistent, simple to master and innately appealing in its ingenious simplicity.

## 3 한글 (2)

IN THIS UNIT ...

- More about Hangeul
- More about pronunciation



### HANGEUL – THE KOREAN ALPHABET

Let us continue studying Hangeul. In this unit we learn the alphabetical order of Hangeul letters and their individual names, and some of the very basic pronunciation rules.

#### 1 Korean alphabetical order and names of Hangeul letters

Alphabetical order for consonants and vowels, as currently standardised in the Republic of Korea, is as shown in the following boxes.

Consonants	Names	
ㄱ	기역	gi-yeok
ㄲ	쌍기역	ssang-gi-yeok
ㄴ	니은	ni-eun
ㄷ	디귄	di-geut
ㄸ	쌍디귄	ssang-di-geut
ㄹ	리을	ri-eul
ㅁ	미음	mi-eum
ㅂ	비읍	bi-eup
ㅃ	쌍비읍	ssang-bi-eup
ㅅ	시옷	si-ot
ㅆ	쌍시옷	ssang-si-ot
ㅇ	이응	i-eung
ㅈ	지읒	ji-eut
ㅉ	쌍지읒	ssang-ji-eut
ㅊ	치읓	chi-eut
ㅋ	키읔	ki-euk
ㅌ	티읕	ti-eut
ㅍ	피읖	pi-eup
ㅎ	히읇	hi-eut

Vowels	Names	
ㅏ	아	a
ㅑ	애	ae
ㅓ	야	ya
ㅕ	얘	yae
ㅗ	어	eo
ㅛ	에	e
ㅜ	여	yeo
ㅠ	예	ye
ㅡ	오	o
ㅗ	와	wa
ㅛ	왜	wae
ㅜ	외	oe
ㅠ	요	yo
ㅡ	우	u
ㅜ	워	wo
ㅠ	웨	we
ㅡ	위	wi
ㅜ	유	yu
ㅡ	으	eu
ㅜ	의	ui
ㅣ	이	i

To refer to the consonants themselves, use the names provided in the box below. For tensed consonants, the prefix 쌍- (ssang-: *double*) is added to the respective normal consonant. The vowels are referred to as the individual sound they represent.

Alphabetical order is followed letter by letter in units of one syllable. Thus the first entry in a Korean dictionary is 가, followed by all the compounds whose first syllable is 가. These compounds are of course themselves presented in alphabetical order, and so the final entry under 가 in a standard concise dictionary would be 가히 (*fully, sufficiently*), forㅎ (히읇) is alphabetically the last consonant and ㅣ (이) is alphabetically the last vowel. The next entry would be 각, followed by all the 각- compounds, then 간- and so on.

The tensed consonants, i.e., ㄲ, ㄸ, ㅌ, ㅍ and ㅊ, are placed at the conclusion of the respective normal consonant entries, i.e., ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㅌ and ㅍ. That is, ㄲ- entries follow the entire ㄱ- entries and precede ㄴ- entries.

In dictionaries, words which begin with vowels are ordered under ‘zero-initial’ consonant ㅇ (이응), and thus before ㅈ (지읇) and after ㅍ (쌍시읇).

### Some examples

Consider the following list of Korean family names as an example of Korean alphabetical order in action. If you picked up a Korean telephone book, the names would be in this order.

강	계	고	공	곽	구	궁
권	길	김	나	남	노	도
독고	류	맹	명	문	미	민
박	반	방	배	백	변	사
사공	서	선	선우	성	소	손
송	승	신	심	안	양	어
엄	여	연	염	오	옥	우
원	위	유	윤	음	이	인
임	장	전	정	제	제갈	조
주	지	진	차	채	천	최
추	탁	편	하	한	함	허
현	홍	황				

## 2 Reading Hangeul

In the first two units we made a few important points about Korean pronunciation, mostly as to how we pronounce vowels and syllable-initial consonants. Let us review them, and study more points on reading syllable-final consonants. For our reading practice, we draw examples from, wherever possible, country/city names around the world and common English loan words, which should not be regarded as foreign words but rather as Korean words of foreign origin.

### The letters ㅅ and ㅆ

Despite the romanisation convention, ㅅ (시옷, romanised as *s*) and ㅆ (쌍시옷, romanised as *ss*) are pronounced respectively as *sh* and ‘tensed’ *sh* when they occur in front of the vowel *i*, or a ‘y-combined’ vowel (see Page 5). Listen to the language tapes or CDs and practise reading the following examples.

<u>시</u> 드니	오아 <u>시</u> 스	<u>시</u> 에라리온	모리 <u>셔</u> 스	메이 <u>슨</u> 씨
Si-deu-ni	o-a-si-seu	Si-e-ra-ri-on	Mo-ri-syeo-seu	Me-i-seun-ssi
Sydney	Oasis	Sierra Leon	Mauritius	Mr Mason

### The letter ㅇ (이응)

The ㅇ (이응) letter doubles as a silent, or dummy, consonant when it is the initial consonant in a syllable; and *ng* when it is the final consonant in a syllable (see Page 8). Now, listen and practise.

<u>우</u> 르과 <u>이</u>	<u>오</u> 페 <u>라</u>	<u>싱</u> 가포 <u>르</u>	<u>가</u> 봉	<u>스</u> 리랑 <u>카</u>
U-reu-gwa-i	o-pe-ra	Sing-ga-po-reu	Ga-bong	Seu-ri-rang-ka
Uruguay	Opera	Singapore	Gabon	Sri Lanka

### The letter ㄹ (리을)

When ㄹ (리을) occurs as the syllable-initial consonant it is pronounced as *r*, more precisely, ‘flap’ *r* (see Page 5). If it occurs as the syllable-final consonant, however, ㄹ is pronounced as *l*, more precisely, ‘retroflex’ *l*. You produce a retroflex *l* sound in the same manner as you do an *l*, except that your tongue tip should be placed on the hard palate, not at the back of the upper teeth. Now, listen and practise.

<u>레</u> 바 <u>논</u>	<u>이</u> 란	<u>마</u> 드 <u>리</u> 드	<u>헬</u> 싱 <u>키</u>	<u>네</u> 팔
Re-ba-non	I-ran	Ma-deu-ri-deu	Hel-sing-ki	Ne-pal
Lebanon	Iran	Madrid	Helsinki	Nepal

When the syllable-final ㄹ (리을) is followed by another ㄹ, that is, when you have two ㄹs between two vowels, the two ㄹs shall be pronounced as retroflex *l*. Now, listen and practise.

<u>텔</u> 레 <u>비</u> 전	<u>필</u> 름	<u>클</u> 럽	<u>칠</u> 레	<u>말</u> 레 <u>이</u> 시아
tel-le-bi-jeon	pil-leum	keul-leop	Chil-le	Mal-le-i-si-a
television	film	club	Chile	Malaysia

## Normal, tensed and aspirated consonants

Recall that, despite the romanisation convention, ㄱ (기역), ㄷ (디귤), ㅂ (비읍) and ㅈ (지읒) are pronounced respectively as *k*, *t*, *p* and *ch* when they occur sentence-initially (see Page 5).

In fact, these four consonants, ie *k*, *t*, *p* and *ch*, form series of three in Korean, in which they have *normal* (more precisely, partially aspirated), *tensed* and *aspirated* (more precisely, heavily aspirated) forms, while *s* also has both *normal* and *tensed* forms.

The normal series are ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅈ and ㅅ (시읏), while the tensed series are represented as ㄲ (쌍기역), ㄸ (쌍디귤), ㅃ (쌍비읍), ㅆ (쌍지읒) and ㅆ (쌍시읏), and the aspirated series as ㅋ (키읔), ㅌ (티읕), ㅍ (피읖) and ㅊ (치읓).

The distinction is to be made clearly when these consonants occur syllable-initially. Listen and practise reading the Korean words in the table on the right.

Normal	Tensed	Aspirated
근 geun root	끈 kkeu string	큰 keun big
달 dal moon	딸 ttal daughter	탈 tal mask
불 bul fire	뿔 ppul horn	풀 pul grass
자요 ja-yo “I sleep.”	짜요 jja-yo “It’s salty.”	차요 cha-yo “It’s cold.”
사요 sa-yo “I buy.”	싸요 ssa-yo “It’s cheap.”	

Now, listen and practice reading the country/city names below. The focus here is on the distinction between normal and aspirated forms. Notice in particular that normal forms, ie ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ and ㅈ, are pronounced as romanised – *g*, *d*, *b* and *j*, respectively – when occurring after a *voiced* sound, eg a vowel. By contrast, pronunciation of aspirated forms, ie ㅋ, ㅌ, ㅍ and ㅊ, is constant. (Incidentally, tensed forms, ie ㄲ, ㄸ, ㅃ, ㅆ and ㅆ, are not used in representing foreign loan words in Hangeul.)

가나 Ga-na Ghana	카타르 Ka-ta-reu Qatar	콩고 Kong-go Congo	모나코 Mo-na-ko Monaco
더블린 Deo-beul-lin Dublin	터키 Teo-ki Turkey	캐나다 Kae-na-da Canada	몰타 Mol-ta Malta
브라질 Beu-ra-jil Brazil	프랑스 Peu-rang-seu France	몰디브 Mol-di-beu Maldives	키프로스 Ki-peu-ro-seu Kypros
자메이카 Ja-me-i-ka Jamaica	차드 Cha-deu Chad	피지 Pi-ji Fiji	캄푸치아 Kam-pu-chi-a Kampuchea

## Unexploded consonants

When occurring in the syllable-final position, ㄱ (기역), ㄲ (쌍기역) and ㅋ (키읔) are all pronounced as *unexploded k*. Likewise, ㄷ (디귄) and ㅌ (티을), and ㅂ (비읍) and ㅍ (피읍), are to be pronounced respectively as *unexploded t* and *unexploded p* in the syllable-final position. (Note that ㄸ (쌍디귄) and ㅃ (쌍비읍) do not occur as a syllable-final consonant in modern Korean.)

If you are not sure of *unexploded* sounds, say *act*, *opt*, and “the *cat* pulled ...”. You will find that the underlined *k* (represented as c), *p* and *t* sounds are not *exploded* as in, for example, *back*, *top* and *cat*. Now, listen to the tapes or CDs and practise reading the following words.

기 <u>역</u>	밖	키 <u>읔</u>	디 <u>귄</u>	티 <u>을</u>	비 <u>읍</u>	피 <u>읍</u>
gi-ye <u>ok</u>	ba <u>k</u>	ki-eu <u>k</u>	di-geu <u>t</u>	ti-eu <u>t</u>	bi-eu <u>p</u>	pi-eu <u>p</u>
Name of ㄱ	outside	Name of ㅋ	Name of ㄷ	Name of ㅌ	Name of ㅂ	Name of ㅍ

Also, the letters ㅅ (시읏), ㅆ (쌍시읏), ㅈ (지읏), ㅊ (치읏) and ㅎ (히읏) are all pronounced as *unexploded t* when they occur in the syllable-final position. (Note that ㅆ (쌍지읏) does not occur as a syllable-final consonant in modern Korean.) Now, listen and practise.

시 <u>읏</u>	었	지 <u>읏</u>	치 <u>읏</u>	히 <u>읏</u>
si-o <u>t</u>	eo <u>t</u>	ji-eu <u>t</u>	chi-eu <u>t</u>	hi-eu <u>t</u>
Name of ㅅ	Past-tense marker	Name of ㅈ	Name of ㅊ	Name of ㅎ

Let's continue. In the examples below the underlined ㄱ, ㅂ and ㅅ are pronounced as *unexploded k*, *p* and *t*, respectively. It would be useful to know that when writing a foreign loan word in Hangeul, ㅅ (시읏) – not ㄷ (디귄), nor ㅌ (티을) – appears to be the most preferred letter for a syllable-final *t* sound (for an unclear reason).

넥 <u>타</u> 이	올림 <u>픽</u>	액 <u>션</u> 스타	독 <u>트</u> 린	논 <u>픽</u> 션
nek-ta-i	ol-lim-pik	aek-syeon-seu-ta	dok-teu-rin	non-pik-syeon
necktie	olympics	action star	doctrine	non-fiction
티 <u>프</u>	집 <u>시</u>	메이 <u>크</u> 업	팝 <u>송</u>	리 <u>더</u> 십
tip	jip-si	me-i-keu-eop	pap-song	ri-deo-sip
tip	gypsy	make-up	pop(ular) song	leadership
티 <u>벳</u>	로 <u>봇</u>	크리 <u>켓</u>	라 <u>켓</u>	도 <u>넛</u>
Ti-bet	ro-bot	keu-ri-ket	ra-ket	do-neot
Tibet	robot	cricket	racket	doughnut

## The vowels ㅐ and ㅑ

The distinction between these vowels is being lost in standard spoken Korean (see Page 10).

액 <u>션</u>	엑 <u>스</u> 맨	덴 <u>마</u> 크	댄 <u>디</u>
aek-syeon	ek-seu-maen	Den-ma-keu	daen-di
action	X-man	Denmark	dandy



### The vowels ㅟ, ㅞ, and ㅠ

The distinction between ㅟ (romanised as oe) and ㅞ (romanised as we) is not made in standard spoken Korean (see Pages 6 and 10). Despite the romanisation convention, both of them are pronounced *we* as in *wet* in English. Listen and practise reading the following examples.

In addition, as a result of loss of distinction between ㅟ and ㅠ, the distinction between ㅞ and ㅠ is likewise being lost in standard spoken Korean.

쿠웨이트	짐바브웨	참외	외삼촌	왜요?
Ku-we-i-teu	Jim-ba-beu-we	cham-oe	oe-sam-chon	wae-yo
Kuwait	Zimbabwe	yellow melon	maternal uncle	“Why?”

## 3 Some FAQs

### Are there several different Hangeul scripts?

No, there is only one. There are no separate sets of cursive, lower and upper case letters, as in English.

### So why don't Hangeul characters appear to be written the same way.

Not only are there variations in individual handwriting, but there are also print stylisations and different fonts. As an example of the latter, here are eight different fonts which give the characters different looks.

한글 한글 한글 한글 한글 한글 한글 한글 한글

Even so, these variations are relatively slight. Once your eye adjusts to them, they are never a source of confusion.

Also note there is another source of variation – that caused by the different inner proportions of the writing square. Look at the different proportions of the ㅋ (키읔) letter in the following two words. This is because in 쿠바 the ㅋ is followed by a horizontal vowel, and in 캐나다 it is followed by a vertical vowel:

쿠바 (Cuba)

캐나다 (Canada).

### Is Hangeul written down or across the page?

Predominantly, across the page. However, depending on the conventions of the particular field of writing, Hangeul can be written down. For example, some of the major South Korean magazines are written down the page, while others write across the page.

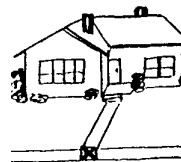
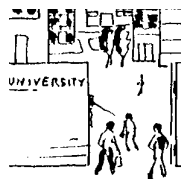
### Is Hangeul written in conjunction with Chinese characters?

Yes and no. Again, it depends on the prevailing conventions. Some South Koreans newspapers use upwards of 3,000 Chinese characters. Others don't use any. In North Korea Chinese characters are not used at all.

## 4 어디 가요?

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Telling people where you are going
- Some basic verbs
- Using the *Polite Informal* verb endings
- More about pronunciation



### WHERE ARE YOU GOING?

When you run into friends or fellow students, you say hello, that is, “안녕하세요?”. Often, you will then notice you are asked where you are heading. Don’t be surprised. The question is rarely meant to be inquisitive, but is simply part of a routine Insa in Korea. It is simply asked after the initial greeting to indicate polite interest in someone’s doings. In this unit we learn how to respond to such questions, and study a bit about using Korean verbs to describe a range of activities.

### 1 Conversation

Kylie, a foreign student in Korea, has just met up with a Korean acquaintance, 선영 (Seon-Yeong), in the street.

카일리: 안녕하세요?

선영: 안녕하세요, 카일리씨. 어디 가요?

카일리: 학교에 가요.

선영: 그래요? 나도 학교에 가요. 같이 가요.



#### Translation

Kylie: Hi.  
Seon-Yeong: Hi, Kylie. Where are you going?  
Kylie: I’m going to school.  
Seon-Yeong: Really? So am I. Let’s go together.

usually indicates that no particular personal relationship exists with the person being addressed. We suggest that in addressing your fellow students by name, you likewise add 씨.

- 어디 ...? (eo-di): *Where ...?*
- 가요 (ga-yo): *go*; for further information, see below.
- 학교 (hak-gyo): *school*
- ...에 (e): *to*
- 그래요? (Geu-rae-yo?): *Is that so?*
- 나 (na): *I*
- ...도 (do): *too, also*
- 같이 (ga-chi): *together*; note that the ㅁ (티을) in 같이 is not pronounced as *t* but *ch*.

#### Notes for Conversation

- ...씨 (ssi): In Korean, we almost never address someone by just their name (“David”, “Annie”, etc) unless they are very close friends. Rather, it is part of Korean etiquette to add some sort of title, or status referent, to someone’s name, and so here 선영 adds 씨 to Kylie’s name. 씨 is a somewhat matter-of-fact title that

## 2 Where are you going? I am going to ...

어디	where	은행	bank
가요?	do you go?/are you going?	서점	bookshop
대학교	university	학생 식당	student dining hall
학교	school	학생	student
교실	classroom	식당	dining hall, restaurant
강의실	lecture room (in university)	집	house, home
도서관	library	시내	downtown
커피숍	coffee shop	-에	to ...
우체국	post office	가요.	I go/I'm going

If we want to ask people where they are going we can say:

**어디 가요?**

and to answer we can say:

**PLACE NAME - 에 가요.**

### EXAMPLES

어디 가요?	Where are you going?
학교에 가요.	I'm going to school.
도서관에 가요.	I'm going to the library.
시내에 가요.	I'm going to the city.

### Language & Culture Notes

- A Korean sentence is complete without the overt grammatical subject. The word-on-word translation of the question 어디 가요? is in fact “Where go?”, and, out of context, it can mean “Where do you/does she/do they go?” etc. We deduce the subject from the context of the sentence. It may take a while for you to get familiar with this way of saying things, but for the moment you can safely assume that, whenever you see a subjectless sentence, the English counterpart of the ‘missing’ subject will always be a pronoun, ie either of *I, you, he, she, it* and *they*, and exactly what the pronoun is will be worked out from the context.
- Although 학교 means *school*, it also identifies any educational establishment from a primary school to a graduate school. Similarly, 교실 means *classroom*, referring to a classroom in any educational institution.

**Pronunciation Notes: Liaison (1)**

When a Hangeul character has the syllable-final consonant and there is no syllable-initial consonant in the following character, that is, when the second character begins with ㅇ (이응), the syllable-final consonant of the first character is pronounced as if it occurs in the syllable-initial position of the second character. This is the prototypical example of the process which we call *liaison*.

*Liaison* is important because it can bring about sound changes; it is indeed the source of many discrepancies between spelling and pronunciation. For instance, 집 (*house*) is pronounced as jip, according to the rule we learnt in the previous unit: ㅂ (비읍) is pronounced as unexploded *p* in the syllable-final position (see Page 18). However, when 집 is followed by a character which begins with ㅇ (이응) as in 집에 (*to a house*), the ㅂ is not pronounced as unexploded *p* but as *b*. It is pronounced as if it occurs in the syllable-initial position of the next character. We thus say ji-be, not jip-e.

The same applies to 교실 (*classroom*). (However, there are further complications involving ㄹ (리을), which we learn later in this Unit.) While 교실 is pronounced as gyo-sil (the syllable-final ㄹ is pronounced as *l*, as explained in Page 16), 교실에 (*to the classroom*) is to be pronounced as gyo-si-re, not gyo-sil-e. The ㄹ is pronounced as if it occurs in the syllable-initial position of the next character (see Page 16, and also Page 3). Listen to the language tapes or CDs and practise reading the following examples.

**EXAMPLES**

집	jip		집에	ji-be	to the house
커피숍	keo-pi-syop		커피숍에	keo-pi-syo-be	to the coffee shop
우체국	u-che-guk	⇒	우체국에	u-che-gu-ge	to the post office
교실	gyo-sil		교실에	gyo-si-re	to the classroom
강의실	gang-ui-sil		강의실에	gang-ui-si-re	to the lecture room

**3 More places where we go ...**

가게	corner shop	극장	cinema, theatre
비디오가게	video shop	시장	market
슈퍼마켓	supermarket	남대문시장	Namdaemun Market
슈퍼	corner shop	버스터미널	bus terminal
병원	hospital	강남터미널	Gangnam Express Bus Terminal
음식점	restaurant	역	railway station
백화점	(bae-kwa-jeom) department store	서울역	(Seo-ul-yeok) Seoul Station
롯데백화점	Lotte Department Store	공항	airport
공원	park	인천공항	Incheon International Airport

## Language & Culture Notes

- 슈퍼마켓 generally refers to a large Western-style supermarket, while 슈퍼 is the name many small local shop keepers choose – a derived name from 슈퍼마켓 (with perhaps the connotation of ‘Mini-Mart’).
- 병원 indicates a hospital or clinic. In Korea there is no widespread system of neighbourhood, or family doctors, and people tend to go to the hospital outpatients division to obtain prescription.
- 남대문시장 (Namdaemun Market), and 동대문시장 (Dongdaemun Market), are the places to go for bargains in Seoul: cheap clothing, jewellery, silk, ginseng, tents, and so on and wonderful local food from street stalls. 남대문 and 동대문 (Dong-dae-mun) refer to the ‘Great South Gate’ and the ‘Great East Gate’ in Seoul, respectively. Here, 남- literally means *south*, 동- *east*, 대- *great* (see also Page 20, the same 대- appears in 대학교), and 문 *gate*.
- 강남터미널 (Gangnam Bus Terminal) is Seoul’s only express bus terminal for buses to all parts of Korea. It can be reached easily by subway. Here 강 literally means *river*, and refers to 한강 (han-gang: the Hangang River) which runs across Seoul. Can you guess where Gangnam Bus Terminal might be located?
- 서울역 (Seoul Station) is in the centre of Seoul. It is both a subway station and the rail-transport hub for long-distance trains to most of Korea. Luggage can be stored in lockers for 24 hours.
- 인천공항 (Incheon International Airport) is the major gateway to Korea, located 35 km southwest of Seoul.

## Pronunciation Notes

- The letter ㅈ in 슈퍼마켓 and 롯데 is to be pronounced as unexploded *t*, as explained in Page 18.
- **Liaison (2):** When a Hangeul character ending in a *partially aspirated* consonant, ie ㄱ (g), ㄷ (d), ㅂ (b) or ㅈ (j), is followed by ㅎ (h), the ㅎ is not pronounced as a separate sound, but is ‘blended’ with the preceding *partially aspirated* consonant, resulting in a *heavily aspirated* sound, ie ㅋ (k), ㅌ (t), ㅍ (p) or ㅊ (ch). (The same is true when ㅎ (h) occurs as a syllable-final consonant and is followed by a *partially aspirated* consonant.) This *heavily aspirated* consonant is then pronounced as if it occurs in the syllable-initial position of the second character, ie where ㅎ occurs. To reflect this we’ve romanised 백화점 as bae-kwa-jeom.
- **Liaison (3):** Note that the ㄹ in 서울역 (Seoul Station) is to be pronounced as *l*, not *r*. The *liaison* rule (1) we introduced in Page 22 is not applied, particularly when the syllable-final ㄹ (l) is followed by a vowel combined with the semi-vowel y, ie 야 (ya), 예 (yeo), 요 (yo) or 유 (yu). We’ve thus romanised 서울역 as seo-ul-yeok, not as seo-u-ryeok.

## 4 Using Korean Verbs (1): the Polite Informal Style

Korean verbs come at the end of clauses and sentences. They have two components: a stem and an ending. The stem gives the meaning, and the ending shows what function the verb performs. The verbs in the list below, marked with a dash, ie ‘-’, are in their stem forms. To use these stems we need to learn a number of endings, and in this Unit we learn to attach the endings in order to ask simple questions and make simple statements. It is worth observing at the outset that Korean verbs are extremely regular, and so once you know one class of ending you can automatically use it with all the verb stems.

There are about twenty verb endings we use to show whether we’re making a statement or asking a question (or expressing commands or suggestions). Twenty may sound a lot, but we use these endings to express another kind of meaning as well: the speech ‘style’ (or level), ie whether we are speaking to the hearer in a polite, formal, informal, or intimate way. We need to recognise at least four grammatically distinctive speech styles in Korean, which we call *Polite Informal*, *Polite Formal*, *Intimate*, and *Written*, respectively. Thus, each of the twenty verb endings can be identified as Polite Informal Statement, Polite Informal Question, Polite Formal Statement, Polite Formal Question, and so on.

The *Polite Informal* style features the verb endings -아요, -어요 and, in the case of ...하- verbs, 해요, with varying intonation patterns attached. See the following page for details. The *Polite Informal* style is appropriate when we talk to people we feel close to, even when they are older or of higher social status, and to strangers perhaps after an initial phase of formality or to just manifest our inclination to be polite but informal to them. We assess that the *Polite Informal* is likely to be of much greater use to most students than the other three, we concentrate on using it in this book.

The *Polite Formal* style is widely used in formal situations. When you use it, it is as if you pay the hearer the compliment of regarding him/her as being of a social status superior to yours. The *Polite Formal* also carries somewhat masculine connotations. So while it can be used by women, this often occurs only when the women concerned are performing roles commonly associated with men – exercising authority in an office situation. We will study the *Polite Formal* in Unit 7.

As the label suggests, the *Intimate* style is used between very close friends, amongst the family members, or by an adult speaking to a child. Thus, using the *Intimate* style towards someone that you don't know very well can make the situation very awkward. The *Written* style is used in literary works; using it in your talk will give an impression that you are reading aloud some written piece. We will study these two styles in the next volume.

### Some basic verbs & expressions

가-	go	쓰-	write
오-	come	만나-	meet
하-	do	보-	see
공부하-	study	시험보-	take an exam
이야기하-	have a chat	잠자-	sleep
먹-	eat	놀-	play
마시-	drink	운동하-	exercise, work out
식사하-	have a meal	뭐	what
숙제하-	do homework	해요?	do you do ...?/are you doing ...?
전화하-	telephone, ring	네.	Yes.
읽-	(i k-) read	아니요.	No.

Traditionally Korean verbs are listed in what is called their 'dictionary form', consisting of the verb stem plus the suffix -다 (-da). However, this form is non-functional in spoken Korean, and so in the vocabulary lists in this book you see just the verb stems. We mention this because your instructor, especially if he or she is a native speaker, may refer to the dictionary form, and when you start to use Korean-English dictionaries you will see all the verbs are listed in this form.

A small number of Korean syllables end with two consonants, as in 읽- (*to read*). When the consonant cluster is followed by a vowel, ie when followed by a syllable that begins with the letter ㅇ (이음), both of the consonants are pronounced (see Page 25). Otherwise, there are rules that apply to determine which of the two are pronounced. In the case of 읽-, the ㄹ (리을) falls silent, and thus we read i k-. We judge that these double consonant syllables are sufficiently rare for us to note the pronunciation when individual cases come up, rather than to offer a list of rules at this stage.



**Do you ...? Yes, I do ...**

To ask and respond to this question in the *Polite Informal* style we attach the -아요/-어요 ending to the verb stem with an appropriate intonation pattern.

Firstly, we attach the ending as follows.

**1. If the last vowel in the verb stem is ㅏ or ㅑ, we add -아요.**

Note, however, (1) the -아 is omitted from -아요 if the preceding verb stem actually ends in ㅏ, and (2) in case of stems ending in ㅑ, the ㅑ is written in combination with the ensuing ㅏ, thus ㅑ요. Note also that this rule is not applicable to the verb stem 하- (to do) and stems ending in 하-. See 3 below.

**EXAMPLES**

놀- + 아요 = 놀아요	오- + ㅏ요 = 와요
가- + 요 = 가요	보- + ㅏ요 = 봐요
잠자- + 요 = 잠자요	시험보- + ㅏ요 = 시험봐요
만나- + 요 = 만나요	

**2. For all other final vowels in the verb stem the ending is -어요.**

Note however (1) in case of stems ending in ㅣ, the ㅣ is written in combination with the ensuing ㅑ, thus ㅑ요, and (2) in case of stems ending in —, we drop — and add ㅑ요.

**EXAMPLES**

읽- + 어요 = 읽어어요	마시- + ㅑ요 = 마셔요
먹- + 어요 = 먹어어요	쓰- ⇒ ㅑ + ㅑ요 = 써요

**3. Verb stems ending in -하 (to do) becomes -해요.****EXAMPLES**

하- ⇒ 해요	식사하- ⇒ 식사해요
숙제하- ⇒ 숙제해요	전화하- ⇒ 전화해요
이야기하- ⇒ 이야기해요	운동하- ⇒ 운동해요
공부하- ⇒ 공부해요	

Secondly, as in English, we say the verb with a rising intonation when we ask a *yes-no* question, and say with a falling intonation when we ask a *wh-* question, make a statement, or answer to a question.

As mentioned above, a Korean sentence is complete without the overt subject and the English counterpart of this ‘missing’ subject is a pronoun. In the examples below we are only assuming the pronoun to be *he*.

**EXAMPLES**

Q: 가요? ↗ Is he going?	A: 네, 가요. ↘ Yes, he's going.
Q: 놀아요? ↗ (No- <u>ra</u> -yo) Is he playing?	A: 네, 놀아요. ↘ (Ne, no- <u>ra</u> -yo) Yes, he's playing.
Q: 읽어요? ↗ (I <u>i</u> - <u>geo</u> -yo) Is he reading?	A: 아니요, 써요. ↘ (A-ni-yo, sseo-yo) No, he's writing.
Q: 마셔요? ↗ Is he drinking?	A: 아니요, 먹어요. ↘ (A-ni-yo, meo- <u>geo</u> -yo) No, he's eating.
Q: 뭐 해요? ↘ What's he doing?	A: 공부해요. ↘ He's studying.

## 5 녹차 주세요.

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Could I have a ... please?
- Please have a ...
- Counting in Korean (1)



### GREEN TEA, PLEASE

In this Unit we learn ways of asking for goods and services – specifically food and drink. We also learn how to offer people refreshments. In addition we take our first look at the Korean counting system.

### 1 Conversation

Annie, another foreign student in Korea, has just walked into a coffee shop. She's talking with the waitress.

종업원: 어서 오세요.

애니: 포도 주스 있어요?

종업원: 미안합니다, 포도 주스는 없어요. 오렌지 주스 있어요.

애니: 녹차 있어요?

종업원: 네, 있어요.

애니: 그럼, 녹차 주세요.



#### Translation

Waitress: Welcome.  
 Annie: Do you have grape juice?  
 Waitress: I'm sorry, we don't have grape juice. We have orange juice.  
 Annie: Do you have green tea?  
 Waitress: Yes, we do.  
 Annie: Well, then, could I have green tea, please?

#### Notes for Conversation

- 종업원 (jong-eo-bwon): waiter, waitress, and other similar employees in the service industry
- 포도 (po-do): grape
- 주스 (ju-seu): fruit juice
- ... 있어요? (i-sseo-yo; see Page 27 for

pronunciation note): *Is there (any) ...?, Have you got (any) ...?*

- ... 없어요. (eop-sseo-yo: See Page 27 for pronunciation note): *There isn't (any) ..., I haven't got (any) ...*
- -는/-은 (neun/eun): This is the topic particle. It indicates that the previous word is being specifically drawn to the other person's attention. The effect is similar to stressing, or italicising, words in English: "*We don't have any grape juice, (implying, but we do have other fruit juice.)*"
- 녹차 (nok-cha): green tea
- 그럼, ... (Geu-reom): Well, then, ...
- ... 주세요 (ju-se-yo): Please give me ..., Can I have ...?

## 2 Drinks & other expressions

물	water	우유	milk
음료수	drink, beverage	식혜	(traditional) rice nectar
콜라	cola	수정과	(traditional) fruit punch
레모네이드	lemonade	술 / -주	liquor
사이다	lemonade	맥주	beer
주스	juice	포도주	wine
차	tea (in general)	소주	distilled hard liquor
홍차	black tea	있-	'there is/are ...', to have
녹차	green tea	없-	there isn't/aren't ...', 'to not have'
인삼차	ginseng tea	주-	to give
커피	coffee	여기	here

### Language & Culture Notes

- 사이다 doesn't mean *cider*, as one might expect, but *lemonade*, as it does in Japanese. This is probably due to some quirk in the circumstances in which lemonade was first introduced to Japan before being introduced in Korea. Currently, however, 레모네이드 is seemingly more used.
- 홍차 literally means *red tea* in reference to the colour of what is called *black tea* in the English speaking world.
- 식혜 is a traditional drink made from fermented rice and powdered malt. It is generally served as a dessert.
- 수정과 is another traditional Korean drink. It is made from dried persimmons (곶감: got-gam), ginger (생강: saeng-gang), cinnamon (계피: gye-pi), and honey (꿀: kkul), and tastes a little bitter yet sweet.
- The hyphen in -주 (*liquor*) indicates that it is a bound form, ie a form that can only be used when it is part of a compound, as is the case with the following 맥주.
- 소주 is a vodka-like spirit made from grain or potatoes, and is very popular in Korea.

### Pronunciation Notes

- Notice the pronunciation of 음료수 (*drink, beverage*): the ㄹ (리을) in 료 is to be pronounced as *n*, not *r*.
- 식혜 (*rice nectar*): This is another example of the liaison explained on Page 23, whereby a partially aspirated consonant becomes heavily aspirated when followed by ㅎ (히을).
- The verb stems 있- and 없- are pronounced as it- (see Page 18) and eop- (see Page 24) respectively. (However, when followed by a vowel as in 있어요 and 없어요, the syllable-final consonants ㅈ (짚시읏) and ㅂ (비읍시읏) are pronounced as they're spelt: i-sseo-yo and eop-seo-yo.)

**When we buy things ...**

To ask about availability in a shop, restaurant, etc, we can say:

**NOUN 있어요?**

The affirmative response will be:

**네, 있어요.**

The negative response will be:

**아니요, 없어요.**

**EXAMPLES**

A: 콜라 있어요? Do you have any cola?

B: 네, 있어요. Yes, we do.

A: 맥주 있어요? Do you have any beer?

B: 아니요, 없어요. No, we don't.

To ask for things, we can say:

**NOUN 주세요.**

When actually handing things over, the shopkeeper may say:

**(네,) 여기 있어요.**

which means (*Yes, here it is* or *here you are*).

**EXAMPLES**

A: 소주 주세요. Soju, please.

B: 네, 여기 있어요. Yes, here it is.

A: 홍차 주세요. I'll have a tea, please.

B: 여기 있어요. Here it is.

**Language Notes: the verb 있어요 and its negative counterpart 없어요**

The Korean expressions 있어요 and 없어요 have two uses. One is where the appropriate English expressions would be: 'There is/isn't ...' (for singular) or 'There are/aren't ...' (for plural). For example:

녹차 있어요?	Is there any green tea?
네, 있어요.	Yes, there is.

Here the question is concerned with the existence (or non-existence) of the thing concerned in some particular circumstances.

A second use of the Korean 있어요 and 없어요 is where English expressions similar to those in the following question/answer sequences are used:

녹차 있어요?	Do you have green tea?
네, 있어요.	Yes, we do.

Although the English version of this question/answer sequence does not use *is* (or *are*), the sequence is nonetheless similar (even sometimes identical) in meaning to: *Is there any green tea in your possession, in your shop, at home, etc?* and *Yes, there is*. That is, 있어요 and 없어요 are also used for talking about possession by whoever *you* is, rather than about the general existence of green tea in a given context.

### 3 Fruits, refreshments and other expressions

과일	fruit	참외	yellow melon
사과	apple	키위	kiwi
배	pear	파인애플	pineapple
포도	grape	매실 (주스)	plum juice
오렌지	orange	과자	biscuits
귤	mandarin	사탕	sweets
수박	watermelon	아이스크림	ice cream
자두	plum	들-	to take, take hold of
복숭아	peach	맛 있-	(ma <u>s</u> it-) to be tasty
딸기	strawberry	맛 없-	(ma <u>d</u> eop-) to be unpalatable
감	persimmon	앉-	(a <u>n</u> -) to sit

#### Language, Culture & Pronunciation Notes

- 매실 is a kind of plum, green in colour and smaller and harder than a ‘usual’ plum. 매실 주스, often known simply as 매실, is a relatively recent but very popular soft drink in Korea.
- 맛 (mat) is *taste*. Thus, the literal meaning of 맛 있어요 is ‘(It) has a taste’, and 맛 없어요 ‘(It) doesn’t have a taste’. Note also that, while liaison happens in 맛 있어요 (ma si-sseo-yo), it doesn’t in 맛 없어요 (mat eop-seo-yo). When you say 맛 없어요, give a brief pause between 맛 and 없어요.
- 앉-: The syllable-final consonant cluster ㅈ (니은지읒) is pronounced as *n*. The ㅈ (지읒) falls silent here.

#### When offering food and drink ...

When we offer refreshments to people we can say:

**NOUN 드세요.**

To accept food and/or drink offered to us, we can say:

**네, 감사합니다.**

To decline, we can say:

**아니요, 괜찮아요.**

which means “No, I’m OK (not to have any).”

#### EXAMPLES

차 드세요.	Have some tea.	과일 드세요.	Have some fruit.
네, 감사합니다.	Yes, thank you.	아니요, 괜찮아요.	No, I’m OK.

## Pronunciation Notes

- In Unit 1, we learnt Mi-an-ham-ni-da (*I'm sorry*), Ban-gap-sum-ni-da (*Nice to meet you*), and Gam-sa-ham-ni-da (*Thank you*). When written in Hangeul, these expressions are as follows.

미안합니다.	반갑습니다.	감사합니다.
--------	--------	--------

Notice the discrepancy between spelling and pronunciation involving the syllable-final ㅁ (비읍) in 합 and 습. As we studied in Unit 3 (see Page 18), the syllable-final ㅁ is to be pronounced as an *unexploded p*, but here it is pronounced as *m*. This is in fact part of the general assimilation rule within the Korean sound system whereby a non-nasal *stop* sound (eg *p*, *t* and *k*) becomes nasalised (thus become *m*, *n* and *ng* respectively) when it occurs in front of a nasal sound. The changes from *p* to *m*, *t* to *n*, and *k* to *ng* may seem strange at first sight, but, if you say them slowly, you will see that these pairs of consonants have the same articulation points.

- In Korean, *h* tends to be silent (more precisely, weakly aspirated) when it occurs between two voiced sounds. This is particularly noticeable when the speaker speaks at a normal speed. Thus, you should pronounce 괜찮아요 (*I'm OK*) as gwaen-cha-na-yo, not as gwaen-chan-ha-yo.

## 4 Using Korean Verbs (2): Asking people to do in Polite Informal style

When we ask people to do things in Korean we can say

**VST - (으)세요.**

**Notes:** VST = verb stem; add 으 if the verb stem ends in a consonant; pronounce the verb with a falling intonation.

## EXAMPLES

주-	+	세요	=	주세요.↘	Please give me ...
마시-	+	세요	=	마시세요.↘	Drink.
공부하-	+	세요	=	공부하세요.↘	Study.
읽-	+	으세요	=	읽으세요.↘	(Il-geu-se-yo) Read.
앉-	+	으세요	=	앉으세요.↘	(An-jeu-se-yo) Take a seat.

Note that, while some of the English translations may sound impolite, all the Korean sentences in the example are essentially polite – the Polite Informal ending has been employed.

Also, verb stems that end in ㄹ (리를), such as 들- (*to take, take hold of*), drop the ㄹ before we add -(으)세요. This is why we say 드세요.

들-	⇒	드-	+	세요	=	드세요.↘	(Deu-se-yo) Have some!
놀-	⇒	노-	+	세요	=	노세요.↘	(No-se-yo) Have fun!

## 5 Pure Korean Numbers (exist only for 1–99)

There are two sets of numbers in Korean: *Pure Korean* and *Sino-Korean*. Pure Korean numbers exist only for the numbers 1 – 99 in modern Korean, and are mainly used for the counting of relatively small numbers of objects or people. By contrast, Sino-Korean numbers are used for all larger numbers and, in general, for essentially abstract counting such as mathematics, decimals, fractions, distances and money. Let's study Pure Korean numbers first.



## From one to ten

하나	one
둘	two
셋	(set) three
넷	(net) four
다섯	(da-seot) five
여섯	(yeo-seot) six
일곱	seven
여덟	(yeo-deol) eight
아홉	nine
열	ten

## From ten to nineteen

열	ten
열하나	(yeo-ra-na) eleven
열둘	twelve
열셋	thirteen
열넷	(yeol-let) fourteen
열다섯	fifteen
열여섯	(yeol-yeo-seot) sixteen
열일곱	seventeen
열여덟	eighteen
열아홉	(yeo-ra-hop) nineteen

## The other tens

스물	twenty
서른	thirty
마흔	forty
쉰	fifty
예순	sixty
일흔	(i-reun) seventy
여든	eighty
아흔	ninety

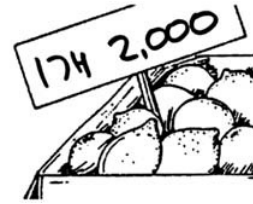
## Pronunciation and Language Notes

- The syllable-final ㅅ (시옷) in 셋 (*three*), 넷 (*four*), 다섯 (*five*), and 여섯 (*six*) is to be pronounced as ‘unexploded’ *t* (see Page 18).
- Note also that the syllable-final consonant cluster ㅈ (리을비읍) in 여덟 (*eight*) is pronounced as *l*. The ㅈ (비읍) falls silent here (see also Page 24 for a note on the syllable-final consonant cluster).
- For numbers from eleven to nineteen, you simply say *ten-one*, *ten-two*, *ten-three*, etc, as you see in the table. The same applies to numbers from twenty-one to ninety-nine; replace 열 (*ten*) with other *tens*, ie, *twenty*, *thirty*, etc in the table.
- As mentioned above, *h* tends to be silent in between two voiced sounds. In 열하나 (*eleven*), 열아홉 (*nineteen*), and 일흔 (*seventy*), the ㅎ (히읇) is regarded to not be there and subsequently liaison happens. We thus romanise 열하나 as yeo-ra-na, not yeol-ha-na; and 일흔 as i-reun, not il-heun.
- By the same token, while we have romanised 아홉 (*nine*), 마흔 (*forty*), and 아흔 (*ninety*) as a-hop, ma-heun, and a-heun respectively, you can disregard the *h* in each case.
- 열넷 (*fourteen*) is pronounced as yeol-let, not yeol-net. It is difficult to pronounce *n* immediately after *l* within the Korean sound system, and thus the *n* assimilates into the preceding *l*.
- Notice also the pronunciations of 열여섯 (*sixteen*) and 열여덟 (*eighteen*). As we explained on Page 23, liaison does not happen when the syllable-final ㄷ (리을) is followed by a vowel combined with the semi-vowel *y*, ie 야 (ya), 여 (yeo), 요 (yo) or 유 (yu). Thus, the 열 in 열여섯 and 열여덟 does not change to yeo-r... but remains as yeol-.
- Finally, some Koreans around you may pronounce 열일곱 (*seventeen*) as yeol-lil-gop, not as yeo-ril-gop. Don’t get embarrassed; variation is a part of language. You may find it interesting that in pre-modern Korean *seven* was ‘닐곱’ (nil-gop). While the spelling has changed, the pronunciation assumes the same rule applied in pronouncing 열넷 (*fourteen*).

## 6 이거 얼마예요?

IN THIS UNIT ...

- This, that (*near you*) and that (*far from both of us*)
- Using counters (or unit noun)
- Counting in Korean (2)
- Asking/telling prices of things



### HOW MUCH ARE THESE?

Having learnt the names of a few goods, Pure Korean numbers, and ways of asking availability in a shop, we might venture into buying things using Korean at a local shop. (If you're outside Korea, you may try a Korean grocery shop.) For this task, let's study how to ask for prices, including how to use demonstratives, Sino-Korean numbers and counters.

### 1 Conversation

Kylie Walker has just walked into a small corner shop in Seoul. She's talking with the shop owner.

카일리: 이거 뭐예요?

가게 주인: 식혜예요.

카일리: 식혜요? 과일 주스예요?

가게 주인: 아니요, 식혜는 ... 한국 전통 음료수예요.

카일리: 아, 네. ... 이 오렌지는 얼마예요?

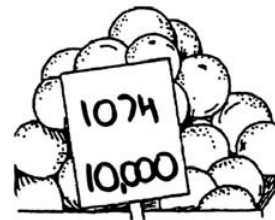
가게 주인: 한 개에 천 원이에요.

카일리: 맛 있어요?

가게 주인: 그럼요. 아주 맛 있어요.

카일리: 다섯 개만 주세요.

가게 주인: 네. ... 오천 원이에요.



**Translation**

Kylie: What's this?  
 Shop owner: It's Si-kye.  
 Kylie: Si-kye? Is it a fruit juice?  
 Shop owner: No, it's ... a Korean traditional drink.  
 Kylie: Oh, I see. ... How much are these oranges?  
 Shop owner: One thousand won each.  
 Kylie: Do they taste nice?  
 Shop owner: Of course. They taste very nice.  
 Kylie: Can I have five of them please?  
 Shop owner: Sure. ... That's five thousand won, please.

**Notes for Conversation**

- 주인 (ju-in): *owner*
- 이거 (i-geo): *this (thing)*
- 식혜 (Si-kye): Note the pronunciation. The ㄱ (기역) in 식 and the following ㅎ (히읇) are not pronounced as separate sounds but are pronounced as a 'single' consonant – a heavily aspirated *k*. See Page 23 for more explanations.
- 식혜요? (Si-kye-yo): *Did you say 'Si-kye'?*  
 When you want to make sure that what you

think you heard, eg a word, is right, repeat the word and add -요 (or -이요 if the word ends in a consonant) with a rising intonation.

- 전통 (jeon-tong): *tradition, traditional*
- 음료수 (eum-nyo-su): As explained on Page 27, the ㄹ (리을) in 료 is pronounced as *n*, not *r*.
- 아, 네. (a, ne): This expression indicates that you *now* understand what has been said. Similar to "Oh, I see."
- 얼마예요? (eol-ma-ye-yo): *How much is it/are they?*
- 한 개에 (han gae-e): *per item*. -개 is a counter for *things (in general)*, similar in function to *item* in, eg *an item of furniture*. Thus, 한 개 means *an item*. The Pure Korean numbers 하나, 둘, 셋, and 넷 becomes 한, 두, 세, and 네 when used before counters (see below).
- 천 원이에요. (cheo nwo-ni-e-yo): *It's/they're one thousand won*. 원 is the Korean currency.
- 그럼요. (geu-reom-yo): *Of course!*
- 다섯 개만 (da-seot gae-man): *only five (of them)*

**2 What's this/that?**

Korean has two ways of saying *that*: one for things far from the speaker but near the hearer, geu-, and one for things far from both the speaker and the hearer, jeo-.

이-	this ...	이거	this thing/object
-거	thing, object	그거	that thing/object (near you)
그-	that ... (near you)	저거	that thing/object (over there)
저-	that ... (over there)	뭐예요?	What is it?

**EXAMPLES**

Q: 뭐예요?	What is it?
A: 맥주예요.	It's beer.
Q: 이거 뭐예요?	What is this?
A: (그거) 배예요.	(That)/It is a pear. (ie near you)
Q: 그거 뭐예요?	What is <i>that</i> ? (ie near you)
A: (이거) 수정과예요.	(This)/It is Sujeonggwa.
Q: 저거 뭐예요?	What is <i>that</i> ? (ie over there)
A: (저거) 우유예요.	(That)/It is Milk. (ie over there)

When answering to the question "What's this?", you can say "That's ..." or "It's ..." in Korean, as you do in English. If you choose to say "That's ...", then give an appropriate demonstrative; if you want to say "It's ...", then don't give any demonstrative. As explained on Page 21, Korean sentences are complete without the subject and the English counterpart of the 'missing' subject is a pronoun, eg *it*.

### 3 How many ... are there?

#### Some useful words

책	book	사진	photo
볼펜	ball-point pen	개	dog
연필	pencil	고양이	cat
의자	chair	전화기	telephone
책상	desk	휴대폰	mobile phone
문	door, gate	텔레비전	television
창문	window	돈	money

#### Language & Culture Notes

For *mobile/cell phones*, an interesting term, 핸드폰 (haen-deu-pon: literally *hand phone*), is widely used in Korea in addition to 휴대폰 (hyu-dae-pon).

#### Some counters and unit nouns

몇	How many ...?	대	counter for <i>machines</i>
개	counter for <i>things in general</i>	마리	counter for <i>animals</i>
병	bottle; also counter for <i>bottles</i>	장	counter for <i>paper</i>
잔	cup, glass; also counter for <i>cups/glasses</i>	통	box, container; also counter for <i>boxes/containers</i>
자루	counter for <i>long/thin things</i>	권	counter for <i>books</i>

#### Pronunciation & Language Notes

- 몇 is always used in conjunction with a counter or a unit noun, and functions as a question word: ‘*how many (items) of ...?*’ Note also that the syllable-final ㅈ (치읓) in 몇 is to be pronounced as *unexploded t*, unless *liaison* happens.
- In Korean, it is not obligatory for a noun to carry information as to whether it is singular or plural. For instance, a sentence such as “책 있어요.” can mean “*There is a book.*” or “*There are books.*”. When it is necessary to show how many books there are, you use a Pure Korean number with an appropriate counter, eg “책 다섯 권 있어요 (*There are five books*)”. Notice the word order here: NOUN - PK Number - Counter. You mention the thing in your mind first, and then specify it.
- We insert a space between 몇 and the following counter. That is, we write 몇 개, not 몇개. Likewise, we insert a space between a PK number and the following counter, eg 다섯 권.

**How many are there?**

To ask this question we can say:

**몇 개 있어요?**

To name the things we're interested in we say:

**NOUN 몇 개 있어요?**

To answer, substitute a Pure Korean number for 몇.

**PK 개 있어요.**

**NOTE:** When adding a counter to Pure Korean numbers, we shorten the numbers 1, 2, 3 and 4 as follows.

하나		한		한 개, 한 병, 한 잔, 한 자루 ...
둘	becomes	두	thus	두 개, 두 병, 두 잔, 두 자루 ...
셋		세		세 개, 세 병, 세 잔, 세 자루 ...
넷		네		네 개, 네 병, 네 잔, 네 자루 ...

**EXAMPLES**

Q: 배 몇 개 있어요?	How many pears are there?
A: 세 개 있어요.	There are three.
Q: 사진 몇 장 있어요?	How many photos are there?
A: 네 장 있어요.	There are four.
Q: 주스 몇 잔 있어요?	How many glasses of juice are there?
A: 두 잔 있어요.	There are two.
Q: 고양이 몇 마리 있어요?	How many cats are there?
A: 한 마리 있어요.	There is one.

**More counters and unit nouns**

킬로	kilogram	원	won (Korean currency)
리터	litre	불 / 달러	dollar
미터	metre	센트	cent

**NOTE:** Counters of foreign origin are not used with Pure Korean numbers, but with Sino-Korean numbers, which we learn below. Note also that we use Sino-Korean numbers in counting money. See Page 37 for examples.

**4 Sino-Korean Numbers**

As mentioned earlier, Sino-Korean numbers are used for all larger numbers (recall that Pure Korean numbers exist only for 1 – 99), for reading off numerals, and for abstract counting such as mathematics, decimals, fractions, distances and money.

## From zero to ten

공	0
일	1
이	2
삼	3
사	4
오	5
육	6
칠	7
팔	8
구	9
십	10

## From ten to nineteen

십	10
십일	(si-bil) 11
십이	(si-bi) 12
십삼	13
십사	14
십오	(si-bo) 15
십육	(sim-nyuk) 16
십칠	17
십팔	18
십구	19

## The other tens

이십	20
삼십	30
사십	40
오십	50
육십	60
칠십	70
팔십	80
구십	90

## Pronunciation and Language Notes

- For numbers from 11 to 19, you simply say *ten-one*, *ten-two*, *ten-three*, etc. The same applies to numbers from 21 to 99.
- For numbers in *tens*, ie, 20, 30, etc, you simply say *two-ten*, *three-ten*, etc. Counting larger numbers has the same story. For 200, 300, 2,000, 3,000, etc, you say *two-hundred*, *three-hundred*, *two-thousand*, *three-thousand*, etc.
- Note that 10,000 is expressed in *separate* term in Korean: 만 (man). Thus, unlike in English, 20,000, 30,000, etc will be 이만 (*two-man*), 삼만 (*three-man*), etc, and 200,000, 300,000, etc 이십만 (*twenty-man*), 삼십만 (*thirty-man*), etc.
- 만 can be prefixed with up to 천 (cheon: 1,000). Thus, 2,000,000, 3,000,000, etc are 이백만 (*two-hundred-man*), 삼백만 (*three-hundred-man*), etc, and 20,000,000, 30,000,000 이천만 (*two-thousand-man*), 삼천만 (*three-thousand-man*), etc.
- For 100,000,000, you use a different term, 억 (eok), and prefix 십, 백 and 천 for even larger numbers.
- The numbers 십, 백, 천 and 만 are by themselves *ten*, *one hundred*, *one thousand*, and *one 'ten thousand'*. Thus, for 10, 100, 1,000 and 10,000, we don't need to prefix these numbers with 일 (il: 1).
- A few examples for *liaison* (see Page 22) are in the list: 십일 (si-bil), 십이 (si-bi) and 십오 (si-bo).
- But the ㅅ (비읍) in 십 is pronounced as *unexploded p* (see Page 18) in 십삼 (sip-sam), 십사 (sip-sa), 십칠 (sip-chil), 십팔 (sip-pal) and 십구 (sip-gu).
- Notice how 십육 (16) is pronounced: sim-nyuk. This is another example for an unchanged pronunciation from pre-modern Korean (see also Page 31), where the Sino-Korean *six* was pronounced as ɾyuk. With the assumed presence of an ɾ, the sound rule applied here is: when the syllable-final *p*, *t*, or *k* is followed by an *r*, the syllable-final consonant becomes nasalised, ie it becomes *m*, *n*, or *ng*, and at the same time the *r* is pronounced as *n*.
- Finally, note the sound changes occurring in 십만 (100,000), 백만 (1,000,000), etc. See Page 30 for explanations.

## Larger numbers

백	100
천	1,000
만	10,000
십만	(sim-man) 100,000
백만	(baeng-man) 1,000,000
천만	10,000,000
억	100,000,000

## 5 How much is it/are they?

To ask the price of goods, we can say:

**얼마예요?**

To name the goods we're talking about we say:

**NOUN 얼마예요?**

To answer we say:

**SK 원이에요.**

**NOTE:** 원 is Korean unit of currency. If the price is in dollars, we use 불 (or 달러) and if necessary 센트 as well, and thus: SK 불 (or SK 달러) SK 센트예요 (*It's/they're SK dollars and SK cents.*)

### EXAMPLES

Q: 얼마예요?	How much is it/are they?
A: 만 원이에요.	It's/they're 10,000 won.
Q: 이거 얼마예요?	How much is this/are these?
A: 만오천 원이에요.	It's/they're 15,000 won.
Q: 녹차 얼마예요?	How much is the green tea?
A: 오만 원이에요.	It's 50,000 won.
Q: 저 의자 얼마예요?	How much is that chair (ie over there)?
A: 십오만 원이에요.	It's 150,000 won.

**NOTE:** We insert a space between the demonstrative 이 (*this*), 그 (*that (near you)*), or 저 (*that (over there)*), and the following noun. Thus we write 저 의자 (*that chair over there*), not 저의자. However, we omit the space when writing 이거 (*this thing/object*), 그거 (*that thing/object (near you)*), and 저거 (*that thing/object (over there)*).

Sometimes we hear people say when giving the price of things:

**PK 개에 SK 원이에요.**

*They're SK won for PK (items).*

**NOTE:** PK 개에 = for PK number of items. Note, however, you use **SK numbers** with counters of foreign origin, eg 킬로 (*kilogram*), 리터 (*litre*), and 미터 (*metre*).

### EXAMPLES

두 개에 십만 원이에요.	They're 1,000 won for two. (eg ornaments)
열 자루에 칠천 원이에요.	They're 7,000 won for ten. (eg pens)
한 병에 오만 원이에요.	They're 50,000 won a bottle. (eg wine)
다섯 권에 이십삼만 원이에요.	They're 230,000 won for five. (eg a series of books)
한 대에 천만 원이에요.	They're 10,000,000 won each. (eg cars)
일 리터에 천 원이에요.	They're 1,000 won a litre. (eg petrol)
일 킬로에 삼 불 오십 센트예요.	They're three dollars and fifty cents a kilo. (eg vegetables)

# 7 한국어 교실

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Classroom management language
- Using the *Polite Formal* verb endings

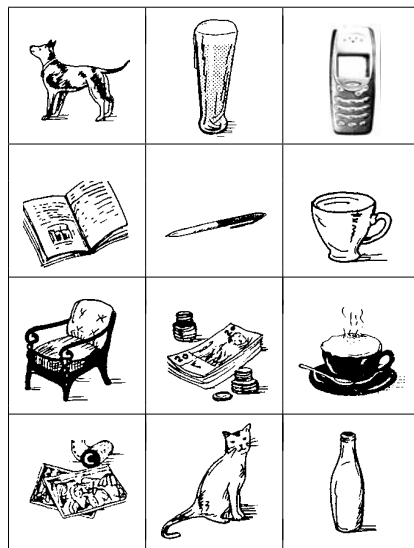


## KOREAN CLASS

The classroom you are in is not a place where Korean is spoken naturally. The majority of the people there are not (at least for the moment) fluent speakers of Korean and, above all, Korean is the object of study. However, we can make our classroom close to a real-life situation if, wherever possible, we take Korean to be the means to achieve our goal. In this unit we study expressions that are frequently used in teaching and learning a foreign language. We also study more about Korean politeness.

### 1 Conversation

상우, Kylie, John, and Annie are playing a 'guessing' game. 상우 is holding a picture table, which has not been shown to the other three. (However, the table is given below for your reference.) The three are given instead, a list of the Korean words for all the pictures in the table. Their task is to find out, by asking 'yes-no' questions only, which picture is in which row and in which column. 상우 can say only 네 or 아니요.



상우: 자, 시작할까요? ... 카일리씨!

카일리: 네. ... 아 ... 첫째 줄 왼쪽에 ... 고양이 있어요?

상우: 아니요.

존: 첫째 줄 왼쪽에 개 있어요?

상우: 네?

존: 첫째 줄 ... 왼쪽에 ... 개 있어요?

상우: 네.

존: 둘째 줄 가운데에 커피 있어요?

상우: 아니요.

카일리: 둘째 줄 가운데에 볼펜 있어요?

상우: 네.

애니: 셋째 줄 오른쪽에 책 있어요?

상우: 아니요.



**Translation**

Sang-U: OK, shall we start? ... Kylie!  
 Kylie: Oh, yes. ... Umm ... On the left of the first row ... is there a cat?  
 Sang-U: No.  
 John: On the left of the first row is there a dog?  
 Sang-U: Sorry?  
 John: On the left of the first row ... is there a dog?  
 Sang-U: Yes.  
 John: In the middle of the second row ... is there a coffee?  
 Sang-U: No.  
 Kylie: In the middle of the second row ... is there a pen?  
 Sang-U: Yes.  
 Annie: On the right of the third row ... is there a book?  
 Sang-U: No.

**Notes for Conversation**

- 자 ... (ja): an interjection used to indicate that *I*, the speaker, now invites *you*, the hearer, to do something (that is good to *you*).
- 시작할까요? (si-ja-kal-kka-yo): *Shall we start?*; here the stem is 시작하- (*to start, begin*), and the ending -(으)까요 (*shall we do ...*). We will study this ending in detail later in the

course. Note also the pronunciation: the ㄱ (*unexploded k*) in ...작 becomes a *heavily aspirated k* in combination with the following ㅎ (*h*) in 하 (see Page 23).

- 아 ... (a): an interjection similar to *Umm* in English. It indicates that the speaker is taking time to figure out what, and how, to say.
- 첫째 줄 (cheot-jjae jul): *the first row*; here 첫째 means *the first*, and 줄 *line, row*.
- 왼쪽에 (oen-jjo-ge): *on the left*; here 왼쪽 means *the left side*, and -에 is the particle we learnt in Unit 4 (see Page 21) in conjunction with the verb 가- (*go*). Note however, while -에 there was used to indicate the place *to* which we are going, -에 here is used to indicate the place *at, on* or *in* which something is. Note also the pronunciation: *Liaison* happens here (see Page 22).
- 네? (ne): *Sorry?, I beg your pardon?*
- 둘째 줄 (dul-jjae jul): *the second row*; 둘째 means *the second*
- 가운데에 (ga-un-de-e): *in the middle*
- 셋째 줄 (set-jjae jul): *the third row*; 셋째 means *the third*
- 오른쪽에 (o-reun-jjo-ge): *on the right*; 오른쪽 means *the right side*

**2 Classroom management language****Some useful expressions**

한국어	the Korean language	다시 한 번	Once again!
한글	Hangeul	네?	Sorry?
이름	name	천천히	Slowly!
여러분	Ladies and Gentlemen!	빨리	Fast!
...씨	Mr/Ms ...	크게	Loudly!
선생님	Teacher!	더	more
다 같이	All together!	다	all

**Language, Culture & Pronunciation Notes**

- The literal meaning of 여러분 (yeo-reo-bun) is *many respected people*, where 여러 means *many* and 분 *respected people*. The function of 여러분 is self explanatory: attention getter. So, if you hear your teacher saying 여러분, you are kindly requested to look at your teacher.
- As mentioned earlier (see Page 20), your instructor will be very likely to use -씨 (ssi) after your name when addressing you or when referring to you for the benefit of your fellow students. Bear in mind that, since -씨 is an honorific title term, you do not use it when you talk about yourself or

when you mention your name.

- When you address your teacher, you don't use -씨 however. The most appropriate expression to use is “선생님 (seon-saeng-nim)”. 선생 is a noun that refers to the profession of *teacher*, and 님 an honorific suffix.
- Despite the spelling, you pronounce 다 같이 (*All together!*) as da ga-chi, not da ga-ti. Here, 다 means *all*, and 같이 *together*.
- 다시 한 번 (da-si han beon) means *Once again!*, where 다시 means *again*, and 한 번 (*once*). We saw in the previous unit that 하나 (*one*), 둘 (*two*), 셋 (*three*), and 넷 (*four*) become 한, 두, 세, and 네 respectively when they occur in front of a counter (a grammatical marker for indicating number properties). The counter for *times* is 번 (beon), thus: 한 번 (*once*), 두 번 (*twice*), 세 번 (*three times*), etc.
- We learnt 네 is *yes*. However, if you say 네 while raising the intonation, you are asking the hearer to repeat what he or she has just said. It is a short but very useful expression to know at this stage.
- 더 (deo) means *more*. You can use it with expressions such as 빨리 (ppal-li: *fast*) and 크게 (keu-ge: *loudly*), as in 더 빨리 (*faster*) 더 크게 (*more loudly*).

### Some expressions for Classroom Activities

첫째	the first	가운데	the middle
둘째	the second	-에	in, on, at
줄	line, row	밑	the bottom
왼쪽	the left side	-에서	from
오른쪽	the right side	마지막	the last, the end
첫째 줄 왼쪽에		on the left side of the first line	
밑에서 둘째 줄		the second last line	

### Language, Culture & Pronunciation Notes

- Ordinal numbers in Korean are 첫째 (cheot-jjaj: *the first*), 둘째 (dul-jjaj: *the second*), 셋째 (set-jjaj: *the third*), 넷째 (net-jjaj: *the fourth*), 다섯째 (cheot-jjaj: *the fifth*), and so on. Note the pronunciation of the syllable-final ㅅ (시옷). As explained on Pages 18 and 23, the syllable-final ㅅ (시옷) is pronounced as *unexploded t* unless it is followed by a vowel. Note also that ordinal numbers in everyday Korean are used *only* within the context of finger counting – they are not used, for example, in naming dates of a month as we do in English.
- If you want to say that something is on the left, on the right, and in the middle, attach the particle -에 to 왼쪽 (oen-jjok), 오른쪽 (o-reun-jjok) and 가운데 (ga-un-de) respectively. Assuming that we are looking at a table with three columns and a few rows where a cat is on the left column of the first row, we say 첫째 줄 왼쪽에 고양이 있어요 (Cheot-jjaj jul oen-jjo-ge go-yang-i i-sseo-yo: literally, *The first line on its left, there's a cat.*).
- 밑에서 (mi-te-seo) consists of 밑 (mit: *bottom*) and -에서 (e-seo: *from*). This expression will be very useful if you want to say, eg the second last line: 밑에서 둘째 줄 (mi-te-seo dul-jjaj jul: literally, *the second line from the bottom*).
- The very last line/row can be referred to as 마지막 줄 (ma-ji-mak jul).

## Some more useful expressions

시작하세요.	Start (it)!
따라 하세요.	Repeat after me!
잘 들어 보세요.	Listen carefully!
해 보세요.	Try it yourself!
질문 있어요.	I have a question.
...은/는 영어로 뭐예요?	What is ... in English?
...은/는 영어로 어떻게 말해요?	How do you say ... in English?
맞아요?	Is it correct?
모르겠어요.	I don't know.
잊어버렸어요.	I've forgotten.
아주 좋아요.	Very good!
잘 하셨어요.	Well done! (You did well!)

## Language Notes

- The first four sentences, ie 시작하세요 (*Start (it)!*), 따라 하세요 (*Repeat after me!*), 잘 들어 보세요 (*Listen carefully!*), and 해 보세요 (*Try it (yourself)!*), are all commands (see Page 30). You will perhaps hear your instructor saying them many times; for instance, 시작하세요 will be said when you are about to do some exercises or group activities, and the expression 해 보세요 is typically to invite you to have a go.
- The expression 잘 (jal) in 잘 들어 보세요 (*Listen carefully!*) means *well*, and thus the whole sentence means, literally, *Listen well!*
- When you want to know the meaning of a particular word, eg 빨리 (ppal-li), you can say ‘빨리’는 영어로 뭐예요? (*What is 빨리 in English?*). Two things we should note here: -는 (neun) and -로 (ro). Firstly, -는, or 은 (eun), is the *topic* particle. The particle indicates that the previous word or words are being specifically drawn to the listener's attention (because the speaker is going to talk about it). You use -는 if the previous word ends in a vowel, and -은 if it ends in a consonant. Secondly, -로, or -으로 (euro), is the *instrument* particle. Its English equivalent would be *by means of, by, in*, etc. You use -로 after a noun ending in a vowel or the consonant ㄹ (리을), and -으로 elsewhere.
- When you are looking for a translation of a sentence, eg Repeat after me, you can say ‘Repeat after me’는 한국어로 어떻게 말해요? (*How do you say ‘Repeat after me’ in Korean?*). Here, 어떻게 means *how*, and 말해요 *do you say?*.
- If you are making good progress in learning Korean, you will very likely hear the last two sentences, ie 아주 좋아요 (A-ju jo-a-yo) and 잘 하셨어요 (Jal ha-syeo-sseo-yo), many times. 아주 means *very*, and 좋아요 (*It's good*). We saw 잘 (jal; *well*) above in 잘 들어 보세요 (literally: *Listen well!*). The same 잘 is used in 잘 하셨어요 (literally, *You did well!*). Incidentally, if you hear 아주 잘 하셨어요 (A-ju jal ha-syeo-sseo-yo), don't be puzzled. It means *You did extremely well!*

### 3 Using Korean Verbs (3): the *Polite Formal* Style

The *Polite Formal* style uses the endings -버니다/-습니다 (-m-ni-da/-seum-ni-da) to make statements (and to respond to questions), -버니까?/-습니까? (-m-ni-kka/-seum-ni-kka) to ask questions, and -십시오/-으십시오 (-sip-si-o/-eu-sip-si-o) to issue commands. We use -버니다, -버니까?, and -십시오 when the verb stem ends in a vowel, and -습니다, -습니까?, and -으십시오 when the stem ends in a consonant.

*Polite Formal* endings are used when there is a feeling of distance between people. They are used, for example, when a student speaking to a teacher; when a younger person speaking to someone who is substantially older; when a person of more junior rank or status is speaking to someone more senior; or when two people who do not know each other very well are conversing.

*Polite Formal* endings are also used between friends in a formal situations. For instance, two close adult friends might use *Polite Formal* endings in a business meeting (and of course switch to *Polite Informal* or even to *Intimate* outside the meeting room).

As mentioned above (see Pages 23 and 24), the *Polite Formal* also carries somewhat masculine connotations. So while it can be used by women, this often occurs only when the women concerned are performing roles commonly associated with men – exercising authority in an office situation.

In summary:

	Polite Formal	Polite Informal
<b>Making a Statement</b>	VST-버니다. VST-습니다.	{ VST-아요/어요. ...해요. }
<b>Asking a Question</b>	VST-버니까? VST-습니까?	{ VST-아요/어요? ...해요? }
<b>Issuing a Command</b>	VST-십시오. VST-으십시오.	VST-세요. VST-으세요

Politeness cannot be reduced to mechanical rules. You will find different people have different ideas about what is appropriate – indeed this difference highlights, at least in part, our individuality. As far as your classroom is concerned, you will have to determine in consultation with your instructor what level of speech is appropriate. If the instructor is middle-aged or beyond, then a more formal style would be appropriate. If the instructor is young, then informality would be appropriate. The age of the instructor is not the only variant, of course. The age of the students should also be taken into account: the older the students, the greater the possibility that formal speech forms would come into play.

We suggest that you avoid being inhibited by the fear of being too informal or formal. As a beginner, you will make many mistakes. But Koreans will not be seriously offended. They are more likely to be delighted that you are trying to use Korean and, as people who are extremely tolerant, friendly and supportive towards foreigners, they will not be hyper-critical of your performance.

On the next page is a table showing both formal and informal Insa, some of which we have studied already. As you can see, these Insa expressions exhibit highly consistent patterns (VST plus an appropriate ending), except for the pair 또 뵈겠습니다 and 또 만나요 (*See you again*) and where marked with a long dash, ———, which indicates that no appropriate expression is available.

Meaning	Polite Formal	Polite Informal
Hello.	안녕하십니까?	안녕하세요?
Pleased to meet you.	반갑습니다.	반가워요.
I'm ...	...입니다.	...이에요/예요.
Good-bye. (to person leaving)	안녕히 가십시오.	안녕히 가세요.
Good-bye. (to person staying)	안녕히 계십시오.	안녕히 계세요.
I'm sorry.	미안합니다.	미안해요.
Thank you.	감사합니다.	_____
Thank you.	고맙습니다.	고마워요.
Not at all.	_____	천만에요.
It's O.K.	괜찮습니다.	괜찮아요.
Yes.	예.	네.
No.	아닙니다.	아니요.
Welcome.	어서 오십시오.	어서 오세요.
Come in.	들어오십시오.	들어오세요.
Sit down.	앉으십시오.	앉으세요.
See you again.	또 뵙겠습니다.	또 만나요.
Sorry I'm late.	늦어서 미안합니다.	늦어서 미안해요.

## 8 오후에 시간 있어요?

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Fixing times to meet people
- Telling and asking the time
- Days of the Week
- 'Shall we ...?' and 'Let's ...'
- 'How about ...?'
- Using Negatives



### ARE YOU FREE THIS AFTERNOON?

In this Unit we continue to look at ways of asking for basic information in Korean, especially fixing times to meet people, and talking about the things we do on a daily basis.

Note also that from this Unit on we do not provide romanisations for Hangeul. We assess that they should not be necessary by now.

### 1 Conversation

지수, a Korean student, is trying to find a time to exchange language lessons with David.

지수: 안녕하세요? 데이비드씨.  
 데이비드: 네, 안녕하세요? 지수씨.  
 지수: 저, ... 오늘 오후에 시간 있어요?  
 데이비드: 미안합니다. 오늘 오후에는 시간 없어요. 수업  
 있어요. 내일은 어때요?  
 지수: 아, ... 오전은 안 돼요. 약속  
 있어요. 오후 두 시 어때요?  
 데이비드: 글썄요. ... 세 시는 어때요?  
 지수: 세 시 괜찮아요.  
 데이비드: 그럼, 세 시에 만날까요?  
 지수: 네, 좋아요.



#### Translation

Ji-su: Hi, David, how's things?  
 David: Hi, Ji-su. Yeah, fine, thanks.  
 Ji-su: Er, are you free this afternoon?  
 David: Not this afternoon, sorry – I've got classes. What about tomorrow?  
 Ji-su: The morning's no good – I've got an appointment. What about two in the afternoon?  
 David: Mmm. ... What about three?  
 Ji-su: Three's OK.  
 David: Well then, shall we meet at three?  
 Ji-su: Sure.

## Notes for Conversation

- 저, ...: This is a polite form of hesitation, similar to *Er ...* or *Um ...* in English.
- 오늘: *today*
- 오후: *p.m.*
- 오늘 오후: *this afternoon*. Notice the ordering  
오늘 오후, not 오후 오늘.
- 시간: *period of time, hour*
- 수업: *class*
- 내일: *tomorrow*
- 오전: *a.m.*
- 아, ...: This expression indicates that the speaker is deciding what to say. It's similar to *Um ...*
- 안 돼요: ... *is no good*. This is the standard phrase to indicate that some course of action or arrangement won't work.
- 약속: *appointment, date*
- 글썽요: This expression indicates that the speaker is hesitant to accept – it is similar to *we-ell*.
- 어때요?: *How (is it)?*
- 그럼, ...: *well, then*
- 만날까요?: *Shall we meet?*; here the stem is

만나- (*to meet*), and the ending -(으)까요 (*shall we do ...*). See below.

- 좋아요: *Good*. This indicates that the speaker is happy to accept what's been said – similar to *Sure*.
- 은/는: Topic Marker. During this course, we'll gradually become familiar with the particle 은/는. Instead of just explaining its grammatical function we prefer to show you how it works in context, so that you can develop a *feel* for it. In asking when David was free in the conversation, 지수's question specified *this afternoon*. What David wants to convey by saying 오늘 오후에는 is that although this afternoon isn't possible, other times are. So he gives special emphasis to the ensuing phrase 내일은 ..., where the particle 은 invites 지수 to focus away from this afternoon to other times. Likewise, when David would prefer three o'clock to two o'clock, he reacts non-committally to 지수, and then invites 지수 to focus on three o'clock – hence he says 세 시는 ....

## 2 Fixing Times to Meet People

### Some Useful Words

오늘	today	-분	minute
내일	tomorrow	-전	before
오전	a.m.	반	half
오후	p.m.	시간	hour, time
지금	now	수업	class
-시	o'clock	한국어 수업	Korean class
몇 시 ...?	What time ...?	약속	appointment, date

### Asking and Telling the Time: Hours and Minutes

To ask the time in Korean we can say:

지금 몇 시예요?

**NOTES:** 지금 = now; 몇 = how many; 시 = o'clock


To answer:


PK 시예요. or  
PK 시 SK 분이에요.

**NOTES:** PK stands for *Pure Korean Number*, and SK *Sino-Korean Number*.

## Examples

We use Pure Korean numbers for the *hours* and Sino-Korean numbers for the *minutes*. (See the Cultural Note below on Page 49.) Notice that -시 in “지금 몇 시예요?” is a counter. While in English we say: *What time is it?*, the Korean equivalent is literally: *How many points in time (of the clock) is it?* We thus shorten the numbers 하나 (*one*), 둘 (*two*), 셋 (*three*) and 넷 (*four*) to 한, 두, 세 and 네 respectively when adding -시 to these Pure Korean numbers (see Page 35).

 <p>한 시 십 분이에요. not <u>하나</u> 시 십 분 이에요.</p>	 <p>두 시 십 분이에요. not <u>둘</u> 시 십 분이에요.</p>	 <p>세 시예요. not <u>셋</u> 시예요.</p>
 <p>네 시 십 분이에요. not <u>넷</u> 시 십 분이에요.</p>	 <p>다섯 시 십 분이에요.</p>	 <p>여섯 시 십 분이에요.</p>



세 시 삼십 분이에요.  
or 세 시 반이에요.

If the time is half past three, you can say either *It's thirty (minutes) past three* or *It's half past three* by adding 반 (*half*) to the hour. That is:

**세 시 반이에요.**



세 시 십오 분이에요.

No equivalent expression for *quarter* is used in telling the time in Korean. If the time is a quarter past three, you simply say:

**세 시 십오 분이에요.**

Also, if the time is 12:45, you say:

**열두 시 사십오 분이에요.**

Alternatively, you can say:

**한 시 십오 분전이에요.**

which means literally *It's 'fifteen minutes' to one*. Here 전 means *before*. The same goes for any minutes between 31 and 59.



열두 시 사십오 분이에요.  
or 한 시 십오 분전이에요.



## Days of the Week

월요일	Monday	금요일	Friday
월요일에	on Monday	토요일	Saturday
화요일	Tuesday	일요일	Sunday
수요일	Wednesday	일요일 오후 1시에	on Sunday one p.m.
목요일	Thursday	주말에	on the weekend

**Pronunciation Notes:** The liaison rule applies when you say 월요일 and 일요일; they are pronounced respectively as wo-ryo-il and i-ryo-il. Note also that 목요일 and 금요일 are pronounced as mo-gyo-il and geu-myo-il respectively.

## Shall we ...?

When we want to propose doing something we can say:

VST - (으)까요?

**NOTE:** If the VST ends in a consonant, add 으.

월요일 오후 한 시에 만날까요?  
자, 시작할까요?  
커피 한 잔 마실까요?  
여기 앉을까요?

Shall we meet at one o'clock Monday afternoon?  
OK. Shall we start?  
Shall we have a cup of coffee?  
Shall we sit here?

**NOTE:** Unlike in English, to say one p.m., you put 오후 first and then 한 시, not the other way around.

If we want to respond positively, we can say:

네, VST - (으)버시다.

*Yes, let's ...*

**NOTE:** If the VST ends in a consonant, add 으.

The -(으)버시다 ending carries masculine connotations, and thus female speakers tend to use:

네, VST - 아요/어요/...해요.

*Yes, we ...*

A: 내일 만날까요?

Shall we meet tomorrow?

B1: 네, 내일 만납시다. or

Yes, let's meet tomorrow.

B2: 네, 내일 만나요.

Yes, let's meet tomorrow. (Literally: *Yes, we meet tomorrow.*)

We can also give a short answer as follows.

A: 내일 오후에 극장에 갈까요?

Shall we go to a movie tomorrow afternoon?

B: 네, 그럼시다. or 네, 그래요.

Yes, let's do that.

And to say *No*, it is polite to use a non-committal expression such as below to show hesitation, rather than giving a direct refusal.

글쎄요 ...

*We-ell ...*

**How about ...?**

When we want other people to consider what we have in mind, we can say:

**NOUN** 어때요?      *How about NOUN?*

**NOTE:** The question literally means *How is/are NOUN?*

**EXAMPLES**

월요일 오후 어때요?	How about Monday afternoon?
내일 오전 열한 시 어때요?	How about eleven tomorrow morning?
지금 어때요?	How about now?
맥주 한 잔 어때요?	How about a beer?

To respond positively, we can say:

**NOUN** 괜찮아요 / 좋아요.      *NOUN is OK / good.*

And to respond negatively, we can say:

**NOUN** 안 돼요.      *NOUN is no good.*

**EXAMPLES**

A: 월요일 오후 세 시 어때요?	How about Monday three p.m.?
B1: 월요일 오후 세 시 괜찮아요. or	Monday three p.m. is OK.
B2: 월요일 오후 세 시 좋아요.	Monday three p.m. is good.
A: 수요일 어때요?	How about Wednesday?
B: 수요일 안 돼요. 수업 있어요.	Wednesday's no good. I've got classes.

**3 Using Negatives**

There are three points we should bear in mind. First, as we've learnt, the negative counterpart of the verb **있-** (*there is/are; to have*) is **없-** (*there isn't/aren't; 'to not have'*).

**EXAMPLES**

시간 있어요?	Do you have time?
아니요, 시간 없어요.	No, I don't have time.
맛 있습니까?	Is it tasty?
글쎄요, 맛 없습니다.	Well, it's not tasty.

Second, the negative counterpart of “**NOUN-예요/이에요** (*am/are/is a NOUN or NOUNs*)” is “**NOUN-(이/가) 아니예요** (*am/are/is not a NOUN or NOUNs*)”. Unlike its positive counterpart, **아니예요** takes a grammatical complement that is optionally marked with the particle **-이** or **-가**. (As we will study in Unit 10, **-이** and **-가** are two variant forms of the Subject marker.) You use the particle **-이** with a noun that ends in consonants, and **-가** with one that ends in a vowel.

Note that the verbs **이-** (*to be*) and **아니-** (*'to not be'*) don't follow the rules we studied on Page 25. We suggest you treat them as exceptions. Note also that **예요/이에요** and **아니예요** change to **입니다** and **아닙니다** in Polite Formal statements respectively.

## EXAMPLES

이거 녹차예요?	Is this green tea?
아니요, 그거 녹차 아니예요.	No, that's not green tea.
아니요, 그거 녹차가 아니예요.	No, that's not green tea.
책이에요?	Is it a book?
아니요, 책이 아니예요.	No, it's not a book.
책입니까?	Is it a book?
아니요, 책 아닙니다.	No, it's not a book.

Third, to say *I/you/they etc don't do such-and-such*, you add the negative adverb **안** with a space before the verb. Note that with verbs ending in **하-** (*to do*), the **안** is placed directly in front of the **하-**.

## EXAMPLES

집에 가요?	Are you going home?
아니요, 집에 안 가요.	No, I'm not going home.
주말에 운동해요?	Do you exercise on the weekend
아니요, 주말에 운동 안 해요.	No, I don't exercise on the weekend
지금 한국어 공부합니까?	Are you studying Korean now?
아니요, 지금 한국어 공부 안 합니다.	No, I'm not studying Korean now.

## 4 Cultural Note: Numbers

The co-existence of two sets of numbers in Korean reflects the co-existence of these two major spheres in Korean culture – the native Korean and the Sino-Korean. The influence of Chinese culture on Korea over the centuries has been profound and perhaps nowhere is this more apparent than in the spoken and written language, where almost 50% of the total Korean lexicon is derived from Chinese, more precisely, Classical Chinese.

We know very little about the shape of Korean civilisation prior to the penetration of Chinese culture into the peninsula, a process that began in earnest about 2,000 years ago. However, it is clear from the depth of the Chinese borrowings that there were many areas, such as art, science, technology, statecraft, and religion, in which the Koreans recognised technological, metaphysical and aesthetic accomplishment and strove to apply Chinese norms to their own environment.

The norms of Chinese civilisation did not enter Korea through invasion. Although the Chinese had a colony in the northwestern part of the peninsula between the first century BC and the fourth century AD, they were not spread among the people of the peninsula by force. Rather, they seeped in over the centuries and were adopted by a people who were strongly attracted to the grandeur and sophistication of many aspects of Chinese civilisation. Of course, they were nonetheless Korean for avidly responding in this way, just as Australians are nonetheless Australian for responding to the attractions of much of European civilisation.

In practice, although Korean has two sets of numbers, rarely, if ever, is there any doubt about which set to use. If we were to describe the difference in a nutshell, it would be that in referring to the hours of the day – a unit of measurement that can more or less be reckoned with a tilt of the head up to the sun in the sky – we use Pure Korean numbers, whereas in referring to the minutes of the hour – a unit of measurement that can only be reckoned with reference to a relatively sophisticated measuring device – we use Sino-Korean numbers. As we saw above (see Page 35), this theme of technology extends to all foreign units of measurement. The Sino-Korean system is used in referring to units of distance, weight and quantity in the Western metric system.

## 9 어느 나라에서 왔어요?

In this Unit ...

- Countries and People
- *Where do you come from?*
- Using Description Verbs
- *Where is it located?*



### WHICH COUNTRY ARE YOU FROM?

In this Unit we learn to exchange personal information about ourselves, in particular, asking and telling people where we come from.

#### 1 Conversation

Annie Brown, an Australian exchange student to Korea, is buying pens in a small stationery shop near her Korean university. She is talking with the owner of the shop, a middle-aged man.

Annie: 안녕하세요? ... 이 볼펜 얼마예요?

Shop Owner: 한 자루에 오백 원이에요.

Annie: 두 자루 주세요.

Shop Owner: 네. ... 학생이에요?

Annie: 네? ... 아, 네. ... 네, 학생이에요.

Shop Owner: 뭐 공부해요?

Annie: 한국어 공부해요.

Shop Owner: 아, 네. ... 한국어가 어려워요?

Annie: 네, 조금 어려워요. 하지만, 재미 있어요.

Shop Owner: 어느 나라에서 왔어요? 미국에서 왔어요?

Annie: 아니오, 호주에서 왔어요.

Shop Owner: 호주요? 호주 사람이예요? ... 호주 어디서 왔어요? 시드니에서 왔어요?

Annie: 아니오. 캔버라에서 왔어요. ... 캔버라 아세요?

Shop Owner: 그럼요. 캔버라 잘 알아요. ... 친구하고 같이 가봤어요. 브리스베인 근처 아니예요?

Annie: 네? ... 아니오, 캔버라는 ... 아 ... 호주 수도예요. ... 아 ... 시드니 근처에 있어요.

Shop Owner: 수도요? 호주 수도는 시드니가 아니예요?

Annie: 아니오, 캔버라예요.

Shop Owner: 아, 네. ... 자! 볼펜 여기 있어요. 천 원이에요.

Annie: 감사합니다. 안녕히 계세요.

Shop Owner: 네, 또 오세요.

## Translation

Annie: Hello. ... How much are these pens?  
 Shop Owner: They're five hundred won each.  
 Annie: Can I have two, please?  
 Shop Owner: Sure. ... Are you a student?  
 Annie: Pardon? ... Oh! Yes! Yes, I'm a student.  
 Shop Owner: What do you study?  
 Annie: I study Korean.  
 Shop Owner: I see. Is Korean difficult?  
 Annie: Yes, a little bit. But, it's interesting.  
 Shop Owner: Which country are you from? Are you from the US?  
 Annie: No, I'm from Australia.  
 Shop Owner: Australia? Are you Australian? ... Whereabouts in Australia are you from? Are you from Sydney?  
 Annie: No, I'm from Canberra. ... Do you know Canberra?  
 Shop Owner: Of course, I do. ... I once went there with my friends. Isn't it near Brisbane?  
 Annie: Pardon? ... No, Canberra is ... umm ... Australia's capital. Umm ... it's ... it's near Sydney.  
 Shop Owner: Did you say that Canberra is the capital city of Australia? Isn't the capital Sydney?  
 Annie: No, the capital is Canberra.  
 Shop Owner: I see ... Well, here are your pens. That'll be one thousand won, thanks.  
 Annie: Thanks. Bye.  
 Shop Owner: Bye.

## Language Notes

- 네?: *I beg your pardon?*
- 아, 네: Similar to "Oh, I see." See Page 45 for more information.
- 한국어가 어려워요?: *Is Korean difficult?* Note that -가 (or -이) is the Subject marker. Use -가 after a noun ending in a vowel, and -이 elsewhere. The verb stem of 어려워요 is 어렵-. It is a description verb, which means that ... *is/are difficult*. See Page 54 below.
- 조금: *a little bit*
- 하지만: *But ...*
- 재미 있어요: *It's interesting.*
- 어느 나라: *Which country ...*
- -에서: *from*
- 왔어요?: Literally, *Did you come ...?* See Unit 10 for Past Tense.
- 미국: *the US*
- 호주: *Australia*
- 호주요?: *Did you say ho-ju?* See Page 45 for more explanations.
- 호주 사람: *an Australian*
- 어디서 = 어디에서: *From where*
- 캔버라 아세요?: *Do you know Canberra?* The stem of 아세요 is 알- (*to know, to know about*).
- 그럼요: *Of course!* Note that 그럼요 is a 'full' sentence on its own.
- 친구: *friend(s)*
- -하고 같이: *together with ...*
- 가봤어요: *I visited ...* The stem is 가보- (*literally, go and see*). See Unit 10 for Past Tense.
- 브리스베인 근처: Literally, *in the vicinity of Brisbane*
- 아니예요?: *Isn't it ...?*
- 호주 수도예요.: *It's Australia's capital.* 수도 is the *capital city*.
- ...에 있어요: *It's located in/at/on ...*
- 자!: an interjection used to signal that the speaker is about to offer something good to the hearer, or about to invite the hearer to do something that the speaker thinks is good to the hearer.
- 또 오세요: Literally, "Please come again!". This is a standard Insa from shop keepers to customers who are taking their leave.

## 2 Some Countries and Continents

나라/-국	country, nation	호주/오스트레일리아	Australia
한국	Korea (ROK)	독일	Germany
북한/이북	North Korea	러시아	Russia
조선	Korea (DPRK)	프랑스/불란서	France
일본	Japan	이탈리아/이태리	Italy
중국	China	스페인	Spain
대만	Taiwan	영국	England, UK
몽고	Mongolia	미국	USA
베트남	Vietnam	아시아	Asia
태국	Thailand	오세아니아	Oceania
말레이시아	Malaysia	유럽	Europe
인도네시아	Indonesia	아메리카	America
인도/인디아	India	아프리카	Africa
파키스탄	Pakistan	외국	overseas
이란	Iran	어느 ...	which ...
이라크	Iraq	-에서	from

### Korean names for countries

Korean names for countries usually reflect the historical period in which Korea first encountered those countries. Major Western Powers, for example, were first encountered in the mid to late 19th century, during the period of encroachment into China. So Korean terms for England and the US, for example, reflect Chinese practice at the time. Countries encountered later during the Japanese Colonial Period (1910-1945), such as Australia, are named according to Japanese practice. In the post-war era there has been an increasing tendency to simply name countries phonetically – the countries listed in Units 2 and 3 are examples of this.

### The names for Korea

The term 한국 (Han-guk) refers to the Republic of Korea, South Korea (1947-), by South Koreans. The full official title of the Republic of Korea is 대한민국 (Dae-han-min-guk), or *Great Han Republic*. *Han* is an age-old term denoting the inhabitants of the central and southern part of the Korean Peninsula, and was originally revived in the late 19th century. The South Koreans usually refers to North Korea as either 북한 (Puk-han), literally 'Northern Han' or 이북 (I-buk), literally 'the North'.

조선 (Jo-seon) was the first kingdom of Koreans which was believed to exist until 108 BC in the South of the Liao He river and the northwestern part of the Korean peninsula, and the name was also used by Yi Dynasty which ruled the entire Korean peninsula from 1392 to 1910. These days 조선 is still in general use in North Korea, and appropriate changes would need to be made in a North Korean context: 조선 사람 (Jo-seon sa-ram) when referring to Korean people; 조선말 (Jo-seon-mal) when referring to the Korean language and so on. North Korea usually refers to South Korea as 남조선 (nam-jo-seon).

### 3 More Geography and Culture Words

동, 서, 남, 북	East, West, South, North	영어	English
동양	the East	불어	French
서양	the West	독어	German
중동	Middle East	스페인어	Spanish
동북아시아	Northeast Asia	아랍어	Arabic
동남아시아	Southeast Asia	페르시아어	Persian
남아메리카	South America	일본어	Japanese
수도	capital city	중국어	Chinese
사람/-인	person	글자	letter, alphabet
말/-어	language, words	한자	Chinese characters

#### Korea/Korean

There is no special adjectival form for Korean nouns – they combine freely with each other. Thus 한국말 (pronounced as Han-gung-mal) – the Korean language – is literally *Korea language*; 한국 사람 (Han-guk-sa-ram) – a Korean person – is literally *Korea person* and so on.

한국어 **and** 한국말

한국말 (Han-gung-mal) refers to the spoken language. 한국어 (Han-guk-eo) tends to refer to the language in both its spoken and written forms. -어 is usually employed when referring to languages such as English which are widely known in both their spoken and written forms.

#### The Expression 한- in 한자

The 한- in 한자 (han-ja) doesn't have the same meaning as the 한- in 한국. In fact it is the same *Han* as in the Chinese Han Dynasty, and by association with a major Chinese dynasty this term often means *Chinese* in Korea. Chinese herbal medicine, for example, is 한약 (Han-yak). The pronunciation and Hangeul are the same, but each is written with a different Chinese character.

### 4 Some More Useful Words

알-	know	덥-	be hot
-하고	and, (together) with	춥-	be cold
... 근처에	in the vicinity of ...	따뜻하-	be (nice and) warm
-(으)로 유명하-	be famous for	재미 있-	be interesting
여러 나라	many countries	재미 없-	be boring
가보-	visit (Literally: go and see)	조금	a little (bit)
많-	be numerous	SK Number - 층	n-th floor
적-	be small (in number)	일 층	Ground Floor
쉽-	be easy	몇 층에 ...?	On which floor ...?
어렵-	be difficult	화장실	toilette

## 5 Using Description Verbs

Korean lacks the class of description words we call adjectives in English. The counterparts in Korean of English adjectives are actually verbs: we will call them *Description Verbs*. To describe something we simply add the appropriate verb ending to the relevant description verb stem, just as we do with the verbs we studied in previous units. That is, the same rules apply. (See Page 23 for Polite Informal endings, and Page 42 for Polite Formal ones.)

With Polite Informal, if the final vowel in the verb stem is ㅏ or ㅑ we add -아요; for all other final vowels the ending is -어요. Of course, verb stems ending in 하- transform to 해요. Look at the following list to see these rules in action.

많-	add -아요 ⇒	많아요	<i>They're numerous.</i>
적-		적어요	<i>They're few.</i>
재미 있-	add -어요 ⇒	재미 있어요	<i>It's interesting.</i>
재미 없-		재미 없어요	<i>It's boring.</i>

We've already seen how 하- (*do*) can transform nouns into *Action Verb* stems, eg 공부하- (*to study*), 전화하- (*to telephone*), 숙제하- (*to do homework*), etc. But this is not the only way 하- is used. 하- can form the final syllable of description verb stems, eg, 유명하- (*be famous*), 따뜻하- (*be warm*), etc. Whether the 하- verb is in fact an action or a description verb is usually clear, and can be judged from the context, and from the grammar of the sentence. Consider the following description verbs.

유명하-	하- changes to 해요 ⇒	유명해요	<i>They're famous.</i>
따뜻하-		따뜻해요	<i>It's (nice and) warm.</i>

Bear in mind that, with verb stems ending in ㅁ, the ㅁ changes to ㅍ, to which we then add -어요. We have met two such verb stems already: 반갑- (*be pleased* eg, to see you) and 고맙- (*be grateful*). Consider the following list of verbs.

반갑-	ㅁ changes to ㅍ, ⇒	반가워요	<i>I'm pleased.</i>
고맙-		고마워요	<i>I'm thankful.</i>
어렵-	then add -어요	어려워요	<i>It's difficult.</i>
쉽-		쉬워요	<i>It's easy.</i>
덥-		더워요	<i>It's hot.</i>
춥-		추워요	<i>It's cold.</i>

With the verbs 덥- (*be hot*), 춥- (*be cold*) and 따뜻하- (*be warm*), note that Korean doesn't describe a personal reaction with temperature, by saying 'I'm hot/cold,' but rather makes an object statement 'It's hot/cold.'

As for the Polite Formal style, adding the appropriate ending is indeed straightforward. We use -ㅂ니다 (for statements) and -ㅂ니까/-ㅆ니까 (for questions) when the verb stem ends in a vowel. When the stem ends in consonants, we use -습니다 (for statements) and -습니까/으십니까 (for questions). See Page 42 for more explanations.



## 6 Where Do You Come from?

We can ask this question by saying

**어디서 왔어요?**

To answer we can say

**PLACE - 에서 왔어요.**

and 저기서 (*from there, ie, far from us*). When 에서 is followed by an action verb that does not indicate motion it indicates the locality of the action indicated in the verb. This aspect of 에서 doesn't concern us at the moment, and will be covered in Unit 10.

**NOTES:** When followed by 오- (or indeed any other verb that indicates motion) 에서 is equivalent to the preposition 'from (a place)' in English. In normal conversation, the 예 is dropped when preceded by 어디 (*where*), 여기 (*here*), 거기 (*there, ie, near you*) and 저기 (*over there*), and thus 어디서 (*from where*), 여기서 (*from here*), 거기서 (*from there, ie, near you*),

### EXAMPLES

유키코씨는 어디서 왔어요?  
일본에서 왔어요.

Where does Yukiko come from?  
She comes from Japan.

And we can ask, for example, *And where in Japan ...?* by saying:

**일본 어디서 왔어요?**

*Where in Japan does she come from?*

## 7 Which/What Country Are You from?

If we want to ask specifically which country someone or something comes from, we can use:

**어느 나라 ...?**

### EXAMPLES

어느 나라에서 왔어요?  
중국에서 왔어요.

What country are you from?  
I'm from China.

어느 나라 사람이에요?  
일본 사람이에요.

What country is (the) person (from)?  
He's/She's Japanese.

어느 나라 말이에요?  
페르시아말이에요.

What country is (the) language (from)?  
It's Persian.

## 8 Where Is It Located?

To ask this question we can say:

**...은/는 어디에 있어요?**

To answer we can say:

**...에 있어요.**

-은/-는 = Topic Marker ; Use -은 after a noun ending in consonants, and -는 after a noun ending in a vowel.

### EXAMPLES

타지 마할은 어디에 있어요?  
인도에 있어요.

Where's Taj Mahal?  
It's in India.

비디오 가게는 어디에 있어요?  
역 근처에 있어요.

Where's the video shop?  
It's near the station.

# 10 몇 시에 일어났어요?

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Things we do on a daily basis
- More time expressions
- Talking about the past
- Dates: year, month and day
- Subject, object and topic markers



## WHAT TIME DID YOU GET UP?

In this unit we look at ways of talking about the things we do on a daily basis with reference to time, and also about things we did in the past.

### 1 Conversation

태우 and Kylie are talking at the university canteen.



- 태우: 어제 뭐 했어요?  
 카일리: 어제요? ... 여러 가지 했어요.  
 태우: 아주 바빴어요?  
 카일리: 글썄요. ... 다 말할까요?  
 태우: 네?  
 카일리: 나는 어제 ... 일곱 시에 일어났어요. 일곱 시 반에 아침식사를 했어요. 그리고 아홉 시에 학교에 갔어요. 아홉 시 반에 여기서 친구를 만났어요. 같이 커피를 마셨어요. ... 열 시에 도서관에 갔어요. 도서관에서 두 시간 동안 공부했어요. 그리고 열두시부터 두시까지 한국어 수업이 있었어요. ... 점심식사는 두 시에 했어요. ... 네시부터 한 시간 동안 운동했어요. 친구하고 같이 운동했어요. 다섯 시 반에 집에 돌아왔어요. 일곱 시에 저녁 식사를 했어요. ... 여덟 시에 숙제를 시작했어요. 그리고 열한 시 반에 잠 잤어요.  
 태우: 아, 네. ... 어쨌든, 아주 잘 하셨습니다!



### Translation

Tae-U: What did you do yesterday?  
 Kylie: Yesterday? ... I did various things.  
 Tae-U: Were you very busy?  
 Kylie: Well, ... shall I tell you everything?  
 Tae-U: Pardon?  
 Kylie: Yesterday I got up at seven. Had breakfast at half past seven. And went to university at nine. ... Met a friend at half past nine here. Had coffee together. Went to the library at ten. Studied for two hours in the library. Then I had Korean class from twelve to two. ... I had lunch at two. ... From four I exercised for one hour. I did with my friend. At half past five came back home. Had dinner at seven. ... Started homework at eight. And went to bed at half past eleven.  
 Tae-U: Oh, gosh! ... Well done, any way!

- 말할까요?: *Shall I talk?*
- 나: *I*; this is the first person singular pronoun in Korean
- 일어났어요: *I woke up.*
- 아침 식사를 했어요: *I had breakfast.*
- 그리고: *And*
- -에 갔어요: *I went to ...; I left for ...*
- 여기서: *here/in this place*
- 친구: *friend*
- 만났어요: *I met.*
- 같이: *together*
- 마셨어요: *I drank.*
- 도서관에서: *in the library*
- 두 시간 동안: *for two hours*
- 공부했어요: *I studied.*
- 열두 시부터: *from twelve o'clock*
- 두 시까지: *until two o'clock*
- 있었어요: *I had ... or There was/were ...*
- 점심 식사: *lunch*
- 운동했어요: *I exercised.*
- 친구하고 같이: *together with a friend*
- -에 돌아왔어요: *I came back ... (so that I was physically in ...)*
- 저녁 식사: *dinner*
- 숙제를 시작했어요: *I began my homework.*
- 잠 잤어요: *I slept.*
- 어쨌든: *Anyway*

### Notes for Conversation

- 뭐 했어요?: *What did you do?*
- 어제요?: *Did you say 'yesterday'?* We've met a similar example already, see 식해요? on Page 33.
- 여러 가지: *various/many (kinds of) things*
- 바빴어요?: *Were you busy?*
- 다: *all*

## 2 Time expressions (1)

어제	yesterday	언제 ...?	When ...?
아침	morning, breakfast	지난 (+ time word)	last ...
아침 식사(를) 하-	to have breakfast	지난 월요일	last Monday
아침(을) 먹-	to have breakfast	지난 주말	last weekend
점심	lunchtime, lunch	이번 (+ time word)	this ... (coming)
저녁	evening, dinner	이번 금요일	this Friday (coming)
낮	day, daytime	이번 주말	this (coming) weekend
밤	night	-전	ago
하루	one day	한 시간 전에	one hour ago
하루에	in one day/per day	작년	last year
몇 시간 ...?	For how long (Lit. <i>how many hours</i> ) ...?	금년	this year

**NOTES:** 오전 (*a.m.*) and 오후 (*p.m.*) refer to the time before and after the midday respectively. By comparison, 아침 (*morning*), 점심 (*lunchtime*) and 저녁 (*evening*) are times when one normally eats breakfast, lunch and dinner respectively, whilst 낮 (*day*) and 밤 (*night*) take 'brightness', or 'darkness', as the point of difference.

**How many hours/times a day do you ...?****하루에 몇 시간/번 ...?**시간: counter for *hours*; 번: counter for *times***EXAMPLES**

Q: 하루에 몇 시간 잠을 자요?	How many hours a day do you sleep?
A: 일곱 시간 잠을 자요.	I sleep seven hours a day.
Q: 하루에 몇 번 식사해요?	How many times do you eat (Lit. <i>have meals</i> ) a day?
A: 세 번 식사해요.	I eat three times a day.

**The question word 언제 (*when?*)****EXAMPLES**

Q: 한국어 수업이 언제 있어요?	When do you have Korean classes?
A: 월요일하고 수요일에 있어요.	We have on Mondays and Wednesdays.

**3 Talking about the past**

When we want to talk about things that have happened in the past we can say

... { VST - 았/었어요. }  
 ... 했어요.

**NOTES:** We choose from -았어요, -었어요 and 했어요 according to the final vowel in the verb-stem – just as we did to get the present tense -아요, -어요 and 해요 (see Unit 4, Page 25). This rule is applicable to both Action and Description Verbs.

**When the verb ends in 하- we choose 했어요.****EXAMPLES**

숙제 다 했어요?	Have you done your homework?
저녁 식사 안 했어요.	I haven't had dinner.
지난 주말에 운동 안 했어요.	I didn't exercise last weekend.
어제는 따뜻했어요.	It was warm yesterday

**If the final vowel in the VST is either ㅏ (except for 하- as shown above) or ㅑ, we add -았어요. When the VST actually ends in ㅏ we simply add ㅏ; when the stem actually ends in ㅑ we add ㅏ to ㅑ and then ㅏ.**

**EXAMPLES**

공원에서 놀았어요.	I played in the park.
시장에 사람이 아주 많았어요.	There were many people in the market.
태우씨는 언제 갔어요?	When did Tae-U go?
한 시간 전에 시험봤어요.	We had an exam an hour ago.

**For all other final vowels in the VST the ending is -었어요. When the VST ends in ㅣ, the ㅣ is written in combination with the ensuing ㅏ, thus ㅐ, and ㅑ is attached; when the VST ends in ㅓ, the ㅓ changes to ㅕ, to which we add ㅏ and ㅑ.**

**EXAMPLES**

이 책 읽었어요?	Did you read this book?
우유 다 마셨어요?	Have you drunk all the milk?
태우씨는 우리 친구였어요.	Tae-U was our friend.
작년에는 아주 추웠어요.	It was very cold last year.

## 4 Dates

To say the date in Korean we combine the relevant Sino-Korean number with *year*, *month* and *day*, respectively.

...년 ...월 ...일

### EXAMPLES

Year	1985 2002	천구백팔십오년 이천이년	1998 2016	천구백구십팔년 이천십육년
Month	January July	일월 칠월	February December	이월 십이월
	<i>For months we use SK numbers, but note:</i>			
	June	유월 ( <i>not</i> 육월)	October	시월 ( <i>not</i> 십월)
Day	the 1st the 28th	일일 이십팔일	the 10th the 31st	십일 삼십일일

### MORE EXAMPLES

1/1/1995 or 1 January 1995	천구백구십오년 일월 일일
25/6/1950 or 25 June 1950	천구백오십년 유월 이십오일
15/8/1945 or 15 August 1945	천구백사십오년 팔월 십오일
30/10/2003 or 30 October 2003	이천삼년 시월 삼십일

### What date is it today?

To ask what date it is today, we can say:

오늘은 몇월 며칠이에요?

며칠 = 몇일; literally, *how many days*

To answer, take out 몇 and put in the month and the day.

...월 ...일이에요

## 5 Some useful expressions

생일	birthday	일어나-	get up
생일파티	birthday party	늦잠자-	sleep late/sleep in
친구	friend	돌아가-	go back
손님	guest, customer	돌아오-	come back
-명	people (another counter for <i>people</i> )	배우-	learn
여섯 명	six people	연습하-	practise
많이	a lot	보통	usually
조금	a little	자주	frequently
살-	live, reside	누구 ...?	who ...?

**The adverbs 자주 (frequently), and 보통 (usually)**

In talking about the frequency of particular activities, events, etc, you can use these adverbs.

**EXAMPLES**

Q: 도서관에 <u>자주</u> 가요?	Do you go to the library <u>often</u> ?
A: 아니요, 자주 안 가요. 일주일에 한 번 가요.	No, not often. I go there once a week.
Q: 학교에 언제 가요?	When do you go to university?
A: <u>보통</u> 아침 10시에 가요.	<u>Usually</u> 10 o'clock in the morning.

**Together with ...**

To indicate that you perform an action with somebody else, you can say:

**NOUN – 하고 (같이) ...**

**NOTES:** In this expression 같이 is often omitted. Also, despite the spelling, 같이 is pronounced as ga-chi, not as ga-ti.

**EXAMPLES**

친구하고 같이 한국어를 배워요.	I learn Korean together with my friends.
선영씨하고 도서관에서 공부했어요.	I studied in the library with Seon-Yeong.

**The particle 에서 (at, in, etc)**

If we want to indicate the location wherein an action, such as eating, meeting, studying, etc, takes place, we use the particle -에서.

**EXAMPLES**

Q: 어디서 식사해요?	Where do you eat?
A: 학생 식당에서 식사해요.	I eat in the student canteen.
Q: 어디서 만났어요?	Where did you meet?
A: 커피숍에서 만났어요.	We met in the coffee shop.
공부는 집에서, 연습은 학교에서 해요	We study at home, and practise in the class.

There's no special preposition in English to indicate the location of an activity, so you'll have to pay careful attention to the verb to determine whether or not you should use 에서.

**6 Time expressions (2)**

동안	for ... (duration)	늦게	late
한 시간 동안	for one hour	벌써	already
일찍	early	아직 + NEG	not yet

**EXAMPLES**

내일 일찍 오세요.	Come early tomorrow.
수업에 30분 늦게 왔어요.	I came to class thirty minutes late.
벌써 6월이에요.	It's already June.
숙제 아직 안 했어요.	I haven't done my homework yet.
어제는 10 시간 동안 잤어요.	I slept for ten hours yesterday.

## 7 Subject, object and topic markers

Let us learn about the particles *이/가* and *을/를*. The former is what we call the subject marker, and the latter the object marker. We use *이* and *을* after a noun that ends in a consonant, and *가* and *를* after a noun that ends in a vowel. The simplest definition of the subject is that it is the answer to the question *Who ...?/What ...?* etc asked before the verb; the simplest definition of a direct object is likewise that it is the answer to the question *Who ...?/What ...?* after the verb. Suppose our answer to the question *Who likes Korea?* is *I like Korea*, then the subject here is *I* and the object *Korea*, for example. Like *은/는*, ie, the topic marker, *이/가* and *을/를* have no clear equivalents in English.

생일이 언제예요?	When's your birthday?
학교가 영어로 뭐예요?	What is hak-kyo in English?
수박을 먹었어요.	I ate watermelon.
커피를 마셨어요.	I drank coffee.

The Korean subject and the object markers are often left out, as you have noticed, in the course of fluent, informal speech. Thus, when these markers are present, they are probably best thought of as a form of mild emphasis or as an indication that the speaker tries not to confuse the hearer.

Usually the first question asked by students is: *What's the difference between 은/는 and 이/가?* In fact, whether you understand the distinction at this stage is not, in our view, a matter of great importance when we think of all the other fundamental aspects of Korean you need to come to grips with. Most students acquire a sense of the difference with time and exposure. But if you are concerned about gaining an understanding of this distinction now, then the following note may help you.

If you recall what we've already said about *은/는* you'll recall that *은/는* gives emphasis to the word/words in front. What we are actually doing is announcing that what follows in the sentence relates to the word(s) indicated by the topic of conversation. We're picking out one of a number of possible items for your attention and then making some statement relating to it. If you look back to the Language Notes to the Unit 5 (Page 26) and Unit 8 (Page 45) Conversation Pieces you'll see a detailed explanation of this point.

With *이/가*, however, we're also involved in emphasis, but in a different manner – we're indicating that the word(s) in front of *이/가* add to what you know already, not that some further comment is following on the word(s). Thus, it is very likely that what follows *이/가* is what you know already. The same thing can be said about *을/를*. Let's contrast these points.

3월 3일은 제 생일이에요.	The 3rd of March is my birthday. or The 3rd of March, it's my birthday.
3월 3일이 제 생일이에요.	My birthday is the 3rd of March. or It's the 3rd of March that is my birthday.
주스는 안 마셨어요.	I didn't drink the juice. or The juice, I didn't drink.
주스를 안 마셨어요.	I didn't drink (any) juice. or It's juice that I didn't drink.

A final note about *이/가* is that it gives rise to the following two variant forms. Before *이/가*, *누구* (*who?*) becomes *누*, and *나* (*I*) becomes *내*.

누구를 좋아해요?	Whom do you like?
누가 와요?	Who's coming?
지희가 나를 좋아해요?	Is Jihui fond of me?
아니요, 내가 지희를 좋아해요.	No, I like Jihui.

# 11 많이 드세요.

## IN THIS UNIT ...

- Table Insa
- A Korean meal
- Common ingredients used in Korean meals
- Buying food and meals
- Some common Korean dishes
- *Shall we ...?*



BON APPETIT.

Food, clothing and shelter are the three basic material necessities of life – and food is surely the most talked about. In this Unit, we learn about Korean food and eating habits so as to extend our ability to interact with Koreans socially.

## 1 Table Insa

자, 드세요.

*Here, help yourself./Take some.* ‘자’ is an interjection commonly used to encourage an action from the hearer which the speaker believes would give pleasure. See also Page 39.

차린 건 없지만 ...

*Lit. We've prepared nothing, but ...;* an expression used by the host/hostess when inviting you to help your self

많이 드세요.

*Bon appetit.* *Lit. Take a lot.;* a standard invitation from the host for a guest not to hold back

더 드세요.

*Have some more.;* an exhortation in the middle of the meal for the guest to refill the plate

김치 좋아하세요?

*Do you like Gimchi?*

식사합시다.

*Let's eat!* This is the standard way for a host to invite a guest to begin a meal, or for one member of a party to suggest to the others that they begin. Note that this expression has masculine connotations.

건배!/듭시다.

*Here's cheers.* *Lit. Let's take, eg, a drink.* There are a few more toasts in Korean, but these are the standard suggestions to raise a glass of alcohol.

잘 먹겠습니다.

*Looks good!* *Lit. I'll eat well.;* an expression used when you start to eat

맛 있어요.

*It's tasty!* *Lit. There is flavour (in this food).* This is the standard compliment about the quality of the meal. We strongly advise you commit it to memory and use it often for the pleasure that it will give your hosts.

아니오, 많이 먹었어요.

*No more, thanks.* If you are being entertained in a very traditional Korea way, your hosts may continue to press food upon you. Your only defense then might be to say this expression politely – literally, it means *No, I've eaten a lot.*

잘 먹었습니다.

*I've eaten well.;* an expression used when you finish eating



## 2 A Korean Meal & Some Related Expressions

음식	food	포크	fork
밥	cooked rice	나이프	knife
국	soup	맵-	be hot (in taste)
찌개	hot-pot style of soup	짜-	be salty
반찬	side-dishes	잡수시-	eat (respect form)
숟가락	spoon	먹어보-	taste, try
젓가락	chopsticks	좋아하-	to like
쓰-	use	싫어하-	to dislike
못	cannot	음식을 만들-	to prepare a meal
후식	dessert	요리하-	to cook

- 밥: cooked rice. In English, we have one word for rice whether it's in the field, in the shop or on the plate. In Korean, if it's in the field it's 벼, when it's harvested it's 쌀, and when it's cooked it's 밥.
- 쓰-: 쓰- can mean *use* as well as *write* (see Page 25); as we saw on Page 25, when the verb stem ends in the vowel —, the — drops out when attaching Polite Informal ending -어요. Thus, 숟가락하고 젓가락을 써요 (*We use spoons and chopsticks*).
- 못: When we want to say that something out of our control, eg, allergy, is preventing us from doing something we can place the negative adverb 못 before the verb. For example, 땅콩을 못 먹어요 (*I can't eat peanuts*). The difference between 못 (*cannot*) and 안 (*do not*) is the difference between being prevented from doing something and deciding not to do something. In English we often say *I couldn't do it* when we really mean *I didn't want to do it*, and it's the same in Korean. Since it's always more polite to be a victim of circumstances, than a deliberate non-performer, it's best to under-use 안 and over-use (or so it may seem to you) 못.
- 맵- is an irregular verb to the extent that ㅁ changes to ㅂ when followed by the -어요 ending. Thus, *The gimchi is a bit hot* will be 김치가 좀 맵워요. (See also Page 54.)
- 잡수시- vs 먹어-: When referring to a small number of basic human activities, such as eating, speaking, giving, or sleeping, Korean speakers use special verb forms to indicate that they regard the person they are referring to as being of a higher social status (see Unit 14). Therefore, of course, we can never use these verb forms in referring to ourselves. For the Korean language learner the challenge is simple: when someone uses ... 잡수세요? in addressing you, you need to have the mental agility to reply with 네, ... 먹어요 and avoid saying 네, ... 잡수세요.

## 3 Common Ingredients of Korean Meals (1)

고기	meat	생선	fish
소고기 (소)	beef (cow, bull)	해물	seafood
돼지고기 (돼지)	pork (pig)	달걀	egg
닭고기 (닭)	chicken - meat (chicken - bird)	콩	beans
양고기 (양)	lamb, mutton (sheep)	두부	tofu

- The pronunciation of 닭: The ㄷ in 닭 remains silent in Modern Korean, whether or not there is a following vowel.

## 4 Common Ingredients of Korean Meals (2)

야채	vegetables	고추	chili peppers
배추	Chinese cabbage	파	shallots
무	white radish	마늘	garlic
상추	lettuce	-장	sauce
시금치	spinach/greens	간장	soy sauce
오이	cucumber	고추장	chilli sauce
깻잎	sesame leaves	된장	soybean paste
땅콩	peanuts	참기름	sesame oil

## 5 Buying Food and Meals

요리	cuisine, cooking	빵	bread
중국요리	Chinese cuisine	빵집	bread shop, bakery
중국음식점	a Chinese restaurant	사-	to buy
일식집	a Japanese restaurant	사먹-	to buy meals (Lit. <i>buy and eat</i> )
한식집	a traditional Korean restaurant	주문하-	order (eg food)
양식집/레스토랑	a Western-style restaurant	돈을 내-	pay
포장마차	a street food stall	싸-	be cheap
식당가	food court	비싸-	be expensive

- 빵: if 빵 sounds a little familiar it's because it has reached the Korean language from Portuguese via Japan and is, therefore, similar to *pain*, the French word for *bread*. It would take a little while to explain how two or three Portuguese words got into Korean, but any book on Japan's history will tell you the tale of the Portuguese in Japan.

## 6 Some Common Korean Dishes

불고기	Korean barbecue. The meat – usually beef but in more informal settings pork is also used – is marinated in various condiments including soy sauce, sugar, spring onion, garlic, sesame seed and sesame oil. It is then cooked over a charcoal or gas fire, on a perforated metal dish with a raised centre or on a gridiron.
갈비	Spare ribs cooked in a similar manner to 불고기. Pork Galbi (돼지 갈비) is also served in more informal settings.
김치	When we say just 김치 we mean <u>cabbage</u> Gimchi, in much the same way as <i>ice cream</i> is presumed to refer to <u>vanilla</u> ice cream unless we specify otherwise. If we want to specify a non-cabbage 김치, we name the vegetable. Thus, <u>cucumber</u> Gimchi, for instance, would be 오이 김치.
만두	Small dumplings with meat filling, usually eaten with a soy and vinegar sauce.

Continued on next page

잡채	Sweet potato noodles and finely-chopped beef and vegetables stir-fried together.
비빔밥	Steamed rice served in a bowl with a number of side helpings of finely-chopped Bulgogi, mushrooms, carrots, spinach and bean sprouts, topped with a fried egg, sunny side up. The ingredients are then combined together by vigorous spoon action, and eaten with chili sauce and a side soup.
김밥	김 is dried green seaweed (laver). To make 김밥, you wrap around, with a thin layer of 김, cooked rice and finely chopped/sliced carrot, pickled radish, meat, fish, etc, and then sliced it into bite-size pieces.
찌개	The suffix 찌개 on the names of dishes indicates that the food is cooked ‘hot-pot’ fashion – in a soup over high heat. Thus 김치 찌개 is a hot soup where the most prominent ingredient is Chinese cabbage Gimchi. More examples include: 해물 찌개 ( <i>seafood Jjigae</i> ), 된장 찌개 ( <i>soybean paste Jjigae</i> ), etc.
튀김	The suffix 튀김 on the names of dishes indicates that the food is being deep-fried in light batter in a similar fashion to Japanese tempura. Thus 야채 튀김 is mixed vegetables deep-fried in batter.
-면	This suffix indicates a noodle dish, such as 냉면 – the cold noodle dish of North Korean origin which is a summertime staple, or 라면 – the ever-ready instant noodles.
-국/-탕	This indicates a soup, the most common of which are Manduguk (만두국: <i>dumpling soup</i> ) and Galbitang (갈비탕: <i>beefy, spare-rib broth</i> ).

## 7 Some language notes

### About the question 이게 뭐예요?: *What’s this?*

By now, you might wonder what the difference would be between “이거 뭐예요?”, which we learnt in Unit 6 (see Page 33), and “이게 뭐예요?”. The main difference is this. Grammatically, 이게 is the combination of 이거 (this thing) and 이 (Subject marker), and meaning-wise, the difference between the two questions is in fact very slight. At best, you can take 이게 as carrying a mild emphasis in line with what we explained in Unit 10 (see Page 61). It has the Subject marker after all, which 이거 doesn’t!

Don’t get alarmed if you see 저게 뭐예요, 그게 뭐예요, etc. 저게 and 그게 are 저거 and 그거 plus the Subject marker respectively.

### The expression ... - 은/는요?: *What (or How) about ...?*

The expression “... - 은/는요?” can be very handy, when we’re asking a kind of contrastive questions that involve more than one persons or things. It allows us not to repeat the whole question as in the examples.

#### EXAMPLES

Q: 커피 마셔요?	Do you drink coffee?
A: 네, 마셔요.	Yes, I do.
Q: 녹차 <u>는</u> 요?	What about Green Tea? cf. 녹차는 (마셔)요?
A: 안 마셔요.	I don’t.
Q: 선영씨는 하루에 몇 시간 한국어를 공부 <u>하</u> 요?	Seon-Yeong, how many hours per day do you study Korean?
A: 하루에 한 시간 공부 <u>하</u> 요.	I do one hour per day.
Q: 태우씨 <u>는</u> 요?	How about you, Tae-U? cf. 태우씨는 (하루에 몇 시간 한국어를 공부 <u>하</u> )요?
A: 하루에 삼십 분 공부 <u>하</u> 요.	I do thirty minutes a day.

## 8 Cultural Notes: Korean Food

Korean food perhaps lacks the variety to become known as one of the world's great cuisines, but nevertheless it contains a lot of pleasant surprises. From its temperate climate and surrounding seas, Korea draws a wide variety of vegetables, fruits and seafood; and from its long winters when fresh food is hard to come by, it draws the inspiration for a rich tradition of pickling or drying fresh foods for later use. It is protein-rich and relatively fat-free.

The most common meats in Korea are beef, pork, chicken and, of course, fish. The most common methods of cooking are slow simmering, for soups, or else broiling over a hot charcoal fire for beef or pork. Characteristic seasoning tends to be sesame oil and seed, soy sauce, fermented bean paste (Doen-jang), salt, white pepper, chili, spring onion, and garlic. By way of quick comparison with its neighbours, Korean food shares a number of dishes with Japanese cuisine; but is generally more robust and pungently flavoured. Korean restaurants offering bland versions of Korean dishes are widespread in Japan. Korean food is also broadly similar to Northern Chinese cooking though, as a small geographical area with little internal climatic variation, Korea lacks important sources of the culinary variety enjoyed by China.

To start off, perhaps we'd better list some of the main styles of Korean cooking. In some cases they overlap; but for the most part it's difficult to find a restaurant in Korea offering food from more than one style. Overseas Korean restaurants usually offer a kaleidoscope of Korean dishes drawn from a variety of these different cooking styles.

**대중 음식:** Literally *the food of the masses* meaning ordinary, everyday food. This is what you get at small restaurants typically around universities, which tend to feature soups based on beef and chicken stocks with accompanying rice and side dishes, and even simple instant noodles. At its worst it is like canteen food; but, at its best, it is a simple and wholesome way of grabbing an inexpensive quick bite.

**궁중 음식:** Literally *palace food*, this is the tradition of royal cooking – Korea's *haute cuisine*. You'd be most unlikely to find any strong flavours like chili or garlic here – only the very subtle use of condiments to enhance the natural flavour of a predominantly vegetarian cuisine. Palace food consists of an amazing variety of flavoursome wild plants, mushrooms, nuts and berries, with an occasional meat or fish dish. Pine nut broth, bell flower roots, ginkgo nuts, abalone mushroom are typical ingredients in a cuisine which offers one of the most striking examples of the deeply rustic, ethereal strain in Korean aesthetics.

Palace food has a very complex, precise tradition of food preparation, requiring years of training and a good deal of labour in its preparation. It's not surprising, then, that there are few palace food restaurants. These are mostly to be found in major hotels in Seoul, and are extremely expensive. For most people, however, the experience of eating in one will be unforgettable.

**한식:** The title simply means *Korean food*, but Hansik restaurants in Korea are more up-market than ordinary restaurants, and offer a richer, more diverse array of Korean dishes. People normally order a set menu based on price, and get a number of courses, often representing regional traditions of cooking. For most visitors to Korea this will be the best way of getting an idea of what Korean cuisine is really capable of.

**중화 요리:** A sign written in Chinese characters on a protruding signboard decked out with scarlet strips of plastic and cloth usually announces the humble and ubiquitous Chinese restaurant in Korea. The food served within will resemble Chinese food more or less depending on what tradition of Chinese cooking you're used to. For Australians who are usually familiar with Cantonese or Szechuan cooking the resemblance will be rather less than more.

Basically, the food served in 중국 음식점 is descended from regional cooking brought to Korea nearly a hundred years ago from the Shandong region adjacent to Korea, and greatly modified since then to satisfy with the demands of the Korean palate. People use Chinese restaurants like

fast food outlets, catching a cheap unpretentious bowl of noodles or dumpling in the Northern Chinese style.

There are also more elaborate Chinese meals at up-market establishments usually found in the major hotels and in expensive neighbourhoods.

Other restaurants: There are various other types of restaurants in Korea specialising in particular dishes.

These might include ginseng chicken (삼계탕), Buddhist vegetarian dishes (산채), green pea flour pancakes (빈대떡) or pigfoot (족발). Interest in foreign foods is growing slowly, but is still not very high in Korea. In cities, almost all non-Korean restaurants outside the major international hotels are either Japanese, highly indigenised Chinese or else Western-style fast food outlets.

### Meals of the day

Koreans eat three meals a day, and to the onlooker there may seem little distinction between the meals in terms of the food eaten. As befits a people with strong agricultural roots, breakfast tends to be a hearty meal, with strongly flavoured soups, rice and Gimchi, although this is changing particularly in cities like Seoul. Lunch is usually little more than a snack, and the evening meal is moderate in quantity and generally eaten early.

### Attitude to meat

The Korean attitude to meat is different to the Australian attitude in a number of ways. To begin with, it is extremely rare to find a Korean who does not express a strong distaste for lamb. Most cite the smell as the main reason and, seeing that no distinction seems to be made between mutton and lamb in Korea, this is perhaps not surprising. Also behind the attitude seems to be a deep-seated cultural reflex, shared with the Japanese and most Chinese, in which people traditionally contrasted their settled, agricultural, beef-eating ways with the nomadic, pastoral, mutton-eating and milk-drinking ways of the Mongols and other *northern barbarians*. It's not as if the Chinese, Japanese and Koreans continue to look down on their northern neighbours, of course. But since the constant threat of northern invasion was a major theme of their respective histories in pre-modern times, the dietary reflex seems to persist.

Beef is the prestige meat in Korea, and it is considerably more expensive than pork. In fact, just as 김치 tends to mean just one kind of Gimchi, so 고기 tends to mean beef, unless otherwise specified. It is therefore expensive, relative to pork and chicken (the other two major meats), and in the course of a normal household meal it is rarely eaten in the amounts that Australians are familiar with. However, for guests beef is often laid on in abundance, and, in a very traditional mode of hospitality, a host might say to a guest 고기 많이 잡수세요 (*Eat plenty of meat!*) to counteract any tentativeness the guest might feel.

### Attitude to alcohol

Koreans have acquired something of a reputation as drinkers over the years, and this reputation can obscure the very careful, moderate attitude taken by most people in Korea. We'd advise you to observe Korean attitudes to drink carefully rather than just accept this reputation at face value.

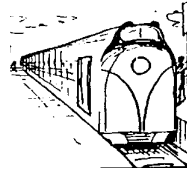
Above all, the use of alcohol is socially and ceremony-bound. The idea of a quiet, relaxing drink or two after work is not common, though sitting down and having round after round with work colleagues is more common, as is consuming considerable amounts of alcohol on weekend group picnics.

In formally entertaining foreigners Koreans will rarely hit the bottle, since getting drunk together is an expression of close friendship, and business colleagues are unlikely to risk losing their inhibitions until they are very familiar with the company they are in. Foreign visitors will lose no respect by displaying a similar degree of self-discipline, even when pressed by their hosts.

# 12 기차로 가요, 버스로 가요?

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Transportation and Travelling
- *What number bus do you take?*
- *How far is it?*
- *How long does it take?*
- Locations
- The Emphatic Particle -도



## DO WE GO BY TRAIN, OR BY BUS?

In Unit 4 we started learning how to identify places, in Unit 9 we learnt a bit about the countries of the world, about asking people where they come from, and where places were located. Now we bring these two themes together again to learn how to find out basic travel information, and describe our own travel experiences.

### 1 Conversation

태우 and Kylie are talking about going somewhere this coming weekend.

태우: 이번 주말에 뭐 해요? 우리, 민속촌에 갈까요?

Kylie: 민속촌이요? ... The Folk Village 말이에요?

태우: 네.

Kylie: 좋아요. ... 그런데, 민속촌에는 어떻게 가요? 기차로 가요, 버스로 가요?

태우: 비행기로 가요.

Kylie: 네?

태우: 농담이에요. ... 수원까지는 지하철로 가요. 그리고 수원에서 민속촌까지는 버스로 가요. 수원역 앞에는 민속촌 가는 버스가 많아요.

Kylie: 아, 네. ... 수원까지는 얼마나 걸려요?

태우: 1 시간 반쯤 걸려요.

Kylie: 수원에서 민속촌까지는요?

태우: 글썽요, 30 분쯤 걸릴 거예요.

Kylie: 아, 네.

태우: 우리, 아침 8 시에 서울역을 출발합니다. 민속촌에서 10 시부터 2, 3 시간 구경해요. 그리고 오후에는 수원을 구경합니다.

Kylie: 네, 좋아요.

태우: 수원은 갈비로도 유명해요. 갈비 좋아하세요?

Kylie: 네, 좋아해요.

태우: 그럼, 점심에는 갈비를 먹읍시다.

## Translation

태우: What are we doing this weekend? Shall we go to the Min-sok-chon?  
 Kylie: Min-sok-chon? You mean the *Folk Village*?  
 태우: Yes.  
 Kylie: Oh, that'd be nice. ... But, how shall we go – by train or bus?  
 태우: We go by plane.  
 Kylie: Pardon?  
 태우: Just kidding. We go by subway to Suwon, and then by bus to the Folk Village. Lots of buses go there from in front of Suwon Station.  
 Kylie: I see. About how long do you think it'll take to get to Suwon?  
 태우: About an hour and half.  
 Kylie: And to the Folk Village from Suwon?  
 태우: Well, about 30 minutes perhaps?  
 Kylie: I see.  
 태우: Let's set off from Seoul Station at 8.00. Then we'll have two to three hours at the Village, and in the afternoon let's have a look at Suwon.  
 Kylie: Mm, that'll be really nice.  
 태우: Suwon is also famous for Galbi. Do you like Galbi?  
 Kylie: I sure do.  
 태우: Then, let's have some kalbi for lunch.

## Language Notes

- 우리: *we*
- The 민속촌 (the Folk Village) is a large tourist park some thirty kilometres south of Seoul in which many aspects of traditional Korean village life are on display.
- The Folk Village 말이에요?: *Do you mean 'Folk Village'?* You use the construction ... 말이에요? when you need additional explanation of what has been said. More precisely, you provide the ... as an additional explanation and ask the hearer to confirm it.
- 네, 좋아요: 좋아요 can be relative rather than absolute. It often means that, given the alternatives, something is preferable and acceptable, rather than actually *good* in its own right.
- 그런데: *By the way, ...*
- 어떻게: *how*
- 기차: *train*
- 기차로 가요, 버스로 가요?: literally, *Do we go by train, or do we go by bus?* This is an 'A-or-B' question in Korean, where two questions are juxtaposed.
- 비행기: *airplane*
- 농담이에요: *I'm just kidding. Literally, It's a joke.*
- -까지: *up to*
- 지하철: *subway*
- ... 앞에: *in front of ...*
- 민속촌 가는 버스: *bus going to the 민속촌*
- 얼마나 걸려요?: *How long does it take?*
- -쯤: *about, approximately* Note that it is attached, not prefixed, to the number expression concerned.
- ...은/는요?: *What about ...?; How about ...?*
- 글썄요: *We-ell*
- VST - (으)ㄹ 거예요: *is going to VST ...* This is a future tense marker (see Unit 14).
- 출발하-: *depart, set off*
- 그리고: *And ...*
- 2, 3 시간 (두, 세 시간): *two to three hours*
- 구경하-: *watch an event, view scenery, take a look*
- -도: an emphatic particle meaning *also*
- 그럼: *Well, then ...*

## 2 Means of Transportation

배	boat, ship	자전거	bicycle
비행기	aircraft	버스	bus
기차 / 열차	train	고속 버스	express bus for inter-province travels
전철	urban electric train	공항버스 / 리무진버스	limousine bus to and from the Airport
지하철	the subway	오토바이	motorbike
전차	tram, street car	-(으)로	by (means of), with
자동차	car		

### Buses in Seoul

파랑 버스	‘Blue Bus’ (urban bus travelling between Seoul CBD and outer Districts)
초록 버스	‘Green Bus’ (urban bus travelling between a subway station and the nearby District)
노랑 버스	‘Yellow Bus’ (urban bus travelling within a District)
빨강 버스	‘Red Bus’ (urban bus travelling between Seoul CBD and a Satellite City)

### ‘Guessing’ the meaning of words

The task of learning enough vocabulary in a foreign language to enable you to function in most situations is, of course, a lengthy one. However, you’ll find as time goes by that this task is made easier by the fact that Korean vocabulary items are often composed of common elements, and more and more we come to recognise these. In this unit the literal meaning of some vocabulary items is as follows.

자동차	self-move-vehicle	자전거	self-rotate-cart
기차	steam-vehicle	열차	line-vehicle
지하철	ground-under-steel	비행기	fly-travel-machine
전차	electricity-vehicle	전철	electricity-steel

Of course, this happens in English too, and the counterpart in English for 자동차 is *automobile*, where *auto-* means *by itself* and *mobile* means *moving*.

### The Instrumental Particle: -(으)로

In Korean we can use -(으)로 to indicate the instrument by which we accomplish something. The 으 is inserted before all consonants except ㄹ – note the case of 연필로 and 지하철로 in the examples below. The instrument may actually be an implement, or a means of transport as in the examples below.

#### EXAMPLES

한국 음식은 젓가락으로 먹어요.	I eat Korean food with chopsticks.
연필로 써요.	I’m writing with a pencil.
학교에 버스로 가요.	We go to school by bus.
지하철로 갑시다.	Let’s go by subway.



### 3 Travelling

관광	tourism	(차를) 타-	get on, get into, catch a vehicle
관광객	tourist	(차를) 타고 가-/오-	ride
여행	trip, voyage	내리-	get out of, off a vehicle
여행사	travel agency	걸어서 가-	go on foot, walk
표	ticket, token	도착하-	arrive
표 파는 곳	ticket counter	출발하-	depart, set off
비행기표	plane ticket	다니-	commute (Lit. go to ... regularly)
기차표	train ticket	SK 번 버스	Bus No ...
-장	(counter for tickets)	DESTINATION 가는 버스	a bus going to ...
시간표	timetable	교통카드	travel pass (Lit. transport card)
거리	distance	...부터	from (a time)
차비	fare, charge	...(에)서부터	from (a place)
바닷가	the seaside	...까지	to (a time/place)
시골	the countryside	...(으)로 해서	via

#### The difference between “학교에 다녀요” and “학교에 가요”

##### From ... to ...

In Korean -부터 shows a starting point in time, the beginning point in an order of precedence, and -까지 shows a limit. With distances, however, we usually add 에서 (just 서 before vowels) before the 부터 to indicate that it is a physical location that is the starting point, and in fact the ensuing 부터 is often omitted. Note also that in talking about our trips, we use ...(으)로 해서 to indicate ‘by a route that passes through ...’.

##### EXAMPLES

6 시부터 9 시까지 공부해요.	We study from 6 to 9.
월요일부터 토요일까지 학교에 가요.	We go to school from Monday to Saturday.
여기서부터 역까지 걸어서 갔어요.	We walked from here to the station.
서울에서 부산까지 비행기를 타고 가요.	We’re going from Seoul to Busan by plane.
뉴욕에서부터 런던으로 해서 로마까지 갔어요.	We went from NY to Rome via London.

## 4 Words for Expanding Sentences

그리고	And ... (between sentences)	아니면	Or ...
하지만	But ...	그런데	By the way ...
그래서	So ...		

## 5 What Number Bus Do You Take?

To ask this question we say:

**몇 번 버스를 타요?**

**NOTES:** 몇 = How many ...?; 번 = number; 버스 = bus; -를 = object marker; 타요? = do you take?

To answer, substitute a Sino-Korean number for 몇.

**SK 번 버스를 타요.**

**NOTES:** When the SK number is greater than one hundred, you can read the number digit by digit.

### EXAMPLES

몇 번 버스를 타요?	What number bus do you take?
삼백삼십삼 번 버스를 타요.	I take the number 333 bus.
삼, 삼, 삼 번 버스를 타요.	I take the number 3, 3, 3 bus.
학교에 칠, 공, 구 번 버스를 타고 와요.	I go (Lit <i>come</i> ) to university by bus number 709.

## 6 How Far Is It ...?

To ask about distances in Korean we say:

**PLACE A - (에)서(부터) PLACE B - 까지 거리가 얼마나 돼요?**

**NOTES:** -(에)서(부터) = from (a place); 까지 = up to/as far as; 거리 = distance; 가 = subject particle; 얼마나 = about how much?; 돼요? = does it amount to?

To answer, substitute 얼마나 with the relevant distance.

### EXAMPLES

여기서부터 역까지 거리가 얼마나 돼요?	How far is it from here to the station?
2 킬로미터 돼요.	It's 2 kilometres (from here).
역에서 거리가 얼마나 돼요?	How far is it from the station?
4 킬로미터 돼요.	It's 4 kilometres.
여기까지 거리가 얼마나 돼요?	How far is it (from the place we've been talking about) to here?
10 킬로미터 돼요.	It's 10 kilometres.

## 7 How Long Does It Take?

To find out how long something takes we ask:

**몇 시간 걸려요?**

몇 = How many ...?; 시간 = hours; 걸려요? = does it take?

To answer, substitute a Pure Korean number for 몇.

**PK 시간 걸려요.**

*It takes PK hours.*

### Time/Distance - 쯔

When we are referring to time in the context of casual or social arrangements, 쯔 often follows the time (or distance) concerned. 쯔 corresponds to the English practice of adding *about* in similar contexts – *Come about 7.00; See you about 3.00; It's about 5 kilometres from here, etc.*

오후 3 시쯔 다시 오세요.

Come again around 3 pm.

서울에서 부산까지는 6 시간쯔 걸려요.

It takes about 6 hours from Seoul to Busan.

여기서부터 역까지 거리가 5 킬로미터쯔 돼요.

It's about 5 kilometres from here to the station.

## 8 Some Locations

밖에 outside

앞에 in front of

옆에 next to

안에 inside

뒤에 behind

맞은 편에 opposite

### EXAMPLES

커피숍은 역 앞에 있어요.

The coffee shop is in front of the station.

음식점은 공원 옆에 있어요.

The restaurant's next to the park.

역 맞은 편에 있어요.

It's opposite the station.

화장실은 역 안에 있어요.

The toilet's inside the station.

## 9 The Emphatic Particle 도

도 is an emphatic particle with the meaning too/also. It replaces 이/가, 은/는 and 을/를:

잡채가 좋아요. 만두도 좋아요.

Japchae is nice. Mandu is nice too.

지수는 불고기를 좋아해요. 태우도 불고기를 좋아해요.

Ji-Su likes Bulgogi. Tae-U likes Bulgogi too.

한국어를 공부해요. 일본어도 공부해요.

I study Korean. I also study Japanese.

However, 도 is added to any other particles, eg, -에, -에서 and -(으)로:

한국에 가요. 일본에도 가요.

I'm going to Korea. I'm going to Japan too.

집에서 저녁을 먹어요. 음식점에서도 저녁을 먹어요.

I eat dinner at home. I eat dinner in restaurants too.

갈비로 유명해요. 소주로도 유명해요.

It's famous for Galbi. It's also famous for Soju.

# 13 가족

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Family members
- Periods of Time
- Using the Possessive Case Particle -의
- Using the Comitative Case Particle -와/-과
- What's your telephone number/name?
- "How long has it been since ...?"
- Making longer sentences using -고 (and) and -지만 (but)



## FAMILY

The Korean family unit is an extended family unit whose complex inter-relationships contrast strongly with the Western nuclear family system. In this Unit we start to gain a feel for this complexity as we acquire a basic vocabulary for describing family members. We also learn to make 'longer' sentences, using a couple of conjunctive endings.

### 1 Yun-Mi's family

윤미네 가족이에요.

부모님과 할머니가 계시고,  
오빠와 언니, 남동생이 있어요.

오빠의 이름은 태우고, 언니의  
이름은 상미, 그리고 남동생의  
이름은 정우예요. 아빠의 성함은  
박명재씨고 엄마의 성함은  
최명옥씨예요. 그리고 할머니  
성함은 이수희씨예요.

할아버지는 돌아가셨어요.  
돌아가신 지 3년 되었어요.

윤미네 식구는 모두 일곱  
사람이에요. 다 같이 살아요.

아, 그리고, 사진에는 없지만,  
개하고 고양이가 있어요. 개의  
이름은 강아지, 그리고 고양이의  
이름은 야옹이에요.



### Language Notes

- -네: 's (when used with a personal name) • 가족: family • 부모님: parents • -과/-와 = 하고: NOUN and NOUN • 할머니: grandmother • VST-(TENSE)-고: SENTENCE, and ... • 오빠: elder brother • 언니: elder sister • 남동생: younger brother • -의: 's (Possessive Case Marker) • 이름: name • 아빠: daddy (endearment form) • 엄마: mummy (endearment form) • 성함: (respected person's) name • 할아버지: grandfather • 돌아가시-: (for a respected person to) die, pass away • VST-(으)ㄴ 지 TIME PERIOD 되었-: It's been TIME WORD since ... • 식구: family members • -지만: SENTENCE, but ... • 강아지: puppy • 야옹이: Lit. the little one that says "야옹 (miaow)"

## 2 Family: Parents, Siblings, Grandparents, Spouse & Children

어머니	mother, mum	형제	brothers
엄마	mum, mummy	자매	sisters
아버지	father, dad	할머니	grandmother
아빠	dad, daddy	할아버지	grandfather
부모님	parents	조부모님	grandparents
형	(a male's) elder brother	외-	maternal ...
오빠	(a female's) elder brother	외할아버지	(maternal) grandfather
누나	(a male's) elder sister	외할머니	(maternal) grandmother
언니	(a female's) elder sister	남편	husband
동생	younger sibling	아내	wife
여동생	younger sister	아들	son
남동생	younger brother	딸	daughter

## 3 Other People

가족	family	친척	relative
식구	family members	큰아버지	아버지의 형 (married)
다섯 식구	a family of five	큰어머니	큰아버지의 아내
모두	all together	작은아버지	아버지의 남동생 (married)
모두 세 사람	a total of 3 people	작은어머니	작은아버지의 아내
아기/애기	baby	삼촌	아버지의 형제 (unmarried)
아이/애	child	외삼촌	어머니의 오빠, 남동생
어른	adult	외숙모	외삼촌의 아내
여자	woman, female	이모	어머니의 언니, 여동생
남자	man, male	이모부	이모의 남편
애인	lover, sweetheart	고모	아버지의 누나, 여동생
남자 친구	boyfriend	고모부	고모의 남편
여자 친구	girlfriend	사촌	cousins
그냥	simply, as it is	조카, 조카딸	nephew, niece

**Language Note:** To say so and so is *just a friend of mine*, rather than your boy/girlfriend, you can use the expression 그냥 as in “그냥 친구예요 (He/She is just a friend)”.

## 4 Some Useful Expressions

태어나-	be born	죽-	die
자라-	grow up	되-	be done, become
고향	home town	이름	name
동안	for, period of time	성함	(a respected person's) name
얼마 동안 ...?	for how long ..?	주소	address
SK년 동안	for SK years	전화번호	telephone number
이사하-	move house	약혼하-	be engaged to
이사오-	move in (ie to one's current address)	결혼하-	marry, get married
이사가-	move away (ie to a new address)	이혼하-	divorce, get divorced
돌아가시-	pass away (for a respected person to die)	재혼하-	're-marry'

## 5 Periods of Time: Summary

Here is a summary for how to refer to periods of time in various ways. To ask:

몇 분 동안 ...?	How many minutes?	몇 주일 동안 ...?	How many weeks?
몇 시간 동안 ...?	How many hours?	몇 달 동안 ...?	How many months?
며칠 동안 ...?	How many days?	몇 년 동안 ...?	How many years?

To answer:

SK 분 동안	for SK minutes	SK 주일 동안	for SK weeks
PK 시간 동안	for PK hours	PK 달 동안	for PK months
SK 일 동안	for SK days	SK 년 동안	for SK years

### EXAMPLES

4 분 동안 (사)	for 4 minutes	1 주일 동안 (일)	for 1 week
10 분 동안 (십)	for 10 minutes	6 주일 동안 (육)	for 6 weeks
2 시간 동안 (두)	for 2 hour	1 달 동안 (한)	for 1 month
3 시간 동안 (세)	for 3 hours	8 달 동안 (여덟)	for 8 months
5 일 동안 (오)	for 5 days	4 년 동안 (사)	for 4 years
7 일 동안 (칠)	for 7 days	9 년 동안 (구)	for 9 years

### LANGUAGE NOTES

- More traditional expressions for *days* are 하루 (*a period of one day*), 이틀 (*two days*), 사흘 (*three days*), 나흘 (*four days*), 닷새 (*five days*), etc. (These are instead of 일 일, 이 일, 삼 일, 사 일, 오 일, etc.)
- In talking about *weeks*, PK numbers can also be used, but seemingly only up to, say, nine. Thus, don't be surprised if you hear Koreans mentioning 한 주일, 두 주일, 세 주일, 네 주일, etc.
- Note also that the forms 석달 for 세 달 (*three months*) and 넉달 for 네 달 (*four months*) also exist.

## 6 It belongs to ...: the Possessive Case Particle -의

When we want to say that such-and-such belongs to so-and-so, we can link the item concerned and the owner using -의. The pronunciation of the syllable 의 can vary according to context, and when it is the Possessive Case Particle, it is pronounced as though it were in fact written /에/. Note also that in normal colloquial speech 의 is usually omitted.

### EXAMPLES

이 책은 홍선생님의 책이에요.	This book belongs to Mrs Hong.
태우씨는 선영씨의 친구예요.	Tae-U is Seon-Yeong's friend.
큰아버지는 아버지의 형이에요.	큰아버지 is one's father's elder brother.
고모부는 고모의 남편이에요.	고모부 is one's father's sister's husband.

## 7 Doing together with ...: the Comitative Case Particle -와/-과

When we want to indicate that we're doing something with a person we can use -와/-과. We use -와 after a vowel, and -과 after a consonant. Note that this runs counter to the practice with other particles, where the forms of the particle which have initial consonants follow preceding vowels. (In general -와/-과 are interchangeable with -하고, which we've learnt already.)

When referring to marriage, note that Korean says 'A married *with* B.', in contrast to the English 'A married B.'

### EXAMPLES

수잔은 조지와 결혼했어요.	Susan married George.
조지는 수잔과 결혼했어요.	George married Susan.
숙제는 친구와 같이 해요.	I do my homework with my friend.
우리 집에는 개와 고양이가 많이 있어요.	There're many dogs and cats in my (Lit. <i>our</i> ) house.

## 8 What's the Phone Number?

To ask this question we can say

전화번호가 어떻게 돼요?

**NOTES:** 어떻게 = How ..?; 돼요? = 되- + 어요 = ... is it done/shaped?

To answer, we usually give the district digits as one number followed by 예, meaning 'in (the prefix area) ...', and then we give the following numbers individually using Sino-Korean numbers. Thus 3456 will be 삼천사백오십육에 육, 칠, 팔, 구.

With Mobile Numbers, however, we give the numbers individually using SK numbers.

## 9 What's Your Name?

To ask this question (not in an abrupt way), we can say:

이름이 어떻게 돼요?

or

성함이 어떻게 되세요?

**NOTES:** 되세요 is a more polite form for 돼요. You use 되세요 when the person you speak about is a respected one.

To answer you simply give your name and -예요/-이에요 or -입니다.

## 10 How long has it been since ...?

To ask this question in Korean we can say:

**VST - (으)ㄴ 지 얼마나 되었어요?**

### LANGUAGE NOTES

- 은/ㄴ = noun modifier form; 지 = since; 얼마 = How much (time); 나 = about; 되었어요? = ... has been done/completed?
- 되었어요 is often shortened to 됐어요.

To answer:

**VST - (으)ㄴ 지 TIME PERIOD 되었어요.**

### EXAMPLES

호주에 오신 지 얼마나 되었어요?	How long have you been in Australia?
마지막 기차가 출발한 지 30 분 됐어요.	It's been thirty minutes since the last train departed.
아침을 먹은 지 한 시간쯤 되었어요.	It's been an hour since I had breakfast.
한국어 공부를 시작한 지 다섯 달 됐어요.	It's been five months since I started Korean.

## 11 Making longer sentences ...

Two sentences, complementary meaning-wise, can be combined into one as follows.

**... VST1 - (TENSE) - 고, ... VST2 - ...**

### EXAMPLES

한국어는 재미있고 아주 쉽습니다.	Korean is interesting and very easy.
오빠의 이름은 태우고, 언니의 이름은 상미예요.	My elder brother's name is Tae-U, and my elder sister's name Sang-Mi.
태우는 미국에서 공부했고, 지수는 영국에서 공부했어요.	Tae-U studied in the US, and Ji-Su in the UK.
수원까지는 지하철로 가고, 수원에서 민속촌까지는 버스로 갈까요?	Shall we go to Su-won by the subway, and then from Su-won to the Min-sok-chon shall we go by bus?

However, when we want to combine two seemingly contradictory sentences we can say:

**... VST1 - (TENSE) - 지만, ... VST2 - ...**

### EXAMPLES

태우는 영어를 공부했지만, 지수는 불어를 공부했어요.	Tae-U studied English, but Ji-Su studied French.
한식은 젓가락과 숟가락으로 먹지만, 양식은 포크와 나이프로 먹어요.	We eat Korean-style food with spoons and chopsticks, but we do Western-style food with forks and knives.
한국어는 어렵지만 재미있어요.	Korean's difficult but interesting.
김치는 좀 맵지만 맛 있어요.	Gimchi's a little hot but tasty.



## 12 Cultural Notes: the Korean Family

The traditional Korean family typically consisted of three generations living under the one roof – the grandparents, their eldest son and family, and unmarried younger children. The position of head of the household passed from eldest son (called 장남) to eldest son. Thus eldest sons continued to live in their parents' house after marriage, while the other children left home at, or soon after, marriage; the sons left to establish their own households, and the daughters to live in the household of their husbands. The eldest son was the sole inheritor of his father's property, and was the only person who could perform the rites of clan ancestor veneration. The eldest son provided the link to line of ancestors that may go back hundreds of years, ancestors whose names were recorded in a clan genealogy register held by individual households known as a Jok-bo (족보). As a matter of course, children growing up in a Korean household became familiar with their family's ancestry, and aware that they belonged to such-and-such a branch of a clan.

Korean society has passed through a rapid period of social change since the Korean War (1950–53). As a result it is hard to generalise about the modern Korean family. However, the vast majority of Korean children today are still raised in a system that continues to have many elements in common with the traditional system. In modern Korea the family remains the key unit of society, and the family is typically an extended family that includes cousins, uncles and aunts from the father's, and to some extent the mother's, side of the family. In contrast to the Western pattern of a nuclear family of independently-minded individualism, who can call upon a wide range of social services and benefits, this extended Korean family determines many key aspects of the shape of its members' lives, while pooling its financial (and other) resources to a far greater degree than its Western counterpart. Family members become used to thinking and acting as a unit, rather than as an individual.

The Korean family unit is, like the Korean society in general, male dominated. While families may vary in terms of what they actually arrange, it is still a principle in Korea that upon marriage the daughters leave the household for their husband's household and the children of the marriage belong to the husband's clan. (Perhaps 'clan' in modern Korea can be 집안). When we look at the formal roles played by men and women in Korea it is easy to focus on the subservient role of women. It may be true that fathers (and, for that matter mothers as well) are generally more pleased if they have a son than if they have a daughter, and that, like their Western counterparts, women who seek to challenge or extend the conventional role of women meet with formidable obstacles, but a debate that concentrates on such negatives finds it easy to overlook the enormous informal power wielded by Korean women.

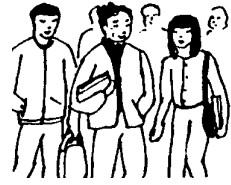
The accepted Korean male role is to deal with the 'outside world', while women deal with the household. In practice this means that men practically exclude themselves from household matters, including interaction with their children and responsibility for the household finances. It is customary for Korean men to hand over their entire pay packet to their wives and then draw an allowance. The wives are then responsible for handling the rest, not only taking care of household finances but also investing any surplus in a bewildering range of formal and informal financial institutions. Through their constant interaction with their children and with other female members of the extended family, and through their financial acumen, Korean women exercise a decisive influence in the rise and fall of families. In short, it may be true that the oldest male member of the household has the final say over a good many family matters, but often the terms of those choices have long been set by the women of the household.

Discussing the Korean family system is a vast and fascinating topic. We suggest you take the opportunity of discussing it with any Koreans you may know. Talking about the doings of family members is a very natural topic of conversation for most Koreans, and provided the questions are not too intrusive, you should gain a much greater insight into how the Korean family functions than is possible from merely reading about it.

# 14 전공이 뭐예요?

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Education
- I'm going to ...
- I want to ...
- Before/After ...
- The Particle -만 (only)



## WHAT'S YOUR MAJOR?

In this unit we learn to talk about our educational experiences, looking back to the past, but also looking to further study and graduation. This often involves talking about our likes and dislikes, and so we learn how to express these as well.

### 1 A story about 태우 ...



태우예요. 태우는 6 살 때  
유치원에 들어갔어요. 7 살 때  
유치원을 마치고 초등학교에  
입학했어요. 13 살 때 초등학교를  
졸업했어요. 그리고 중학교에  
입학했어요. 16 살 때 중학교를  
졸업하고 고등학교에 입학했어요.  
19 살 때 고등학교를 졸업하고  
대학교에 입학했어요. 22 살 때  
대학교를 졸업할 거예요.



## 2 Education: Some Basic Expressions

유치원	kindergarten	PK 살	... years old
초등학교	primary school	... 때	the time when ...
중학교	junior high school (Years 7 – 9)	10 살 때	at the age of ten
고등학교	senior high school (Years 10 – 12)	...을/를 다니-	attend (school, etc)
중고등학교	secondary school	...에 입학하-	enter school, matriculate
대학원	graduate school	...에 들어가-	go into
입학	school entry	...을/를 졸업하-	graduate
졸업	graduation	...을/를 나오-	come out of
졸업식	graduation ceremony	마치-	complete, finish

### Vocabulary Expansion: Guessing the meaning of words

나가-	go out of, leave a place	중학생	a middle school student
나오-	come out of, appear, arrive	고등학생	a high school student
들어오-	come in	대학생	a university (undergraduate) student
들어가-	go in, enter	대학원생	a postgraduate student
입학식	an 'entrance' ceremony	졸업생	a graduate
졸업장	testamur, a diploma of graduation	입학생	a new student
초등학생	a primary school student		

## 3 This weekend I'm going to ...

When we want to talk about our plans for the future, we usually say

**VST - (으)ㄹ 거예요.**

(으) = inserted if VST ends in a consonant; ㄹ = indicates potential state; 거 = 것 = thing, situation, 예요 = is.

### EXAMPLES

이번 주말에 책을 읽을 거예요.  
한국에는 언제 갈 거예요?  
내년에 한국어를 공부할 거예요.  
22 살 때 대학교를 졸업할 거예요.

I'm going to read books this weekend.

When are you going to go to Korea?

I'm going to study Korean next year.

I'm going to graduate from (my) university at the age of twenty-two.

## 4 Education: More Expressions

SK 학년	Year 1, 2, etc (Lit. <i>class year</i> )	성적	marks, results
(SK) 학기	semester/term (1, 2, etc)	학점	credit points
학기말	end of semester	(... 과목을) 듣-	undertake ...
중간 시험	mid-term/semester examination	학점이 안 나오-	fail (a subject)
시험을 잘 보-	do well in an exam	교육을 받-	receive an education
시험을 못 보-	not do well in an exam	유학생	overseas student
방학	school holidays	하숙, 하숙집	boarding, boarding house
전공	a major	기숙사	university hall, dorm
부전공	a minor	아르바이트	part-time work
과목	subject of study	무슨 ...?	Which ...?

**Language Notes (Some Irregular Verbs):** The verb 듣- in 과목을 듣- literally means *to listen*. To make a Polite Informal statement, or ask a question, with this verb stem, we change the syllable-final ㄷ to ㄹ and add 어요. Thus, we say 세 과목을 들어요 (*I undertake three subjects*).

**Language Notes (School Years):** We refer to a person's year of schooling as follows.

초등학교 5 학년 (오)	year 1 of primary	고등학교 1 학년 (일)	year 2 of senior high
초등학교 6 학년 (육)	year 6 of primary	고등학교 3 학년 (삼)	year 3 of senior high
중학교 1 학년 (일)	year 2 of junior high	대학교 1 학년 (일)	year 1 of university
중학교 2 학년 (이)	year 2 of junior high	대학교 4 학년 (사)	year 4 of university

## 5 General

취직하-	enter the workforce, get a job	그 전에	before that
돈을 벌-	earn money	-후에	after ...
학원	private academy, coaching college	PK 시간 후에	after PK hours
경영을 하-	operate, run an organisation	SK 일 후에	after SK days
먼저	first of all	그 후에	after that
-전에	before ...	올해	this year
PK 시간 전에	before PK hours	작년	last year
SK 일 전에	before SK days	앞으로	in the future

## Vocabulary Expansion: Guessing the meaning of words

입학시험	entrance exam (school)	대학교 삼학년 때	at Year 3 of university
학기말시험	end of semester exam	금년	this year
졸업시험	graduation exam	내년	next year
취직시험	entrance exam (company)	잊어버리-	forget
1 학기	Semester 1	모르-	not know

**Language Notes (Some Irregular Verbs):** When we make a statement, or ask a question, if the verb stem ends in ㄹ and the syllable immediately before ㄹ ends in a vowel, we (1) drop ㅡ, (2) add ㅁ to the preceding syllable, and (3) add -라요 (or -러요). To say “I don’t know”, we say “몰라요” in Korean. The verb stem is ‘모르-’, and this is how we arrive ‘몰라요’. Some other forms of 모르- include “몰랐어요 (*I didn’t know*)”.

## 6 Subject of Study, Faculties

-학	... Studies	과학	Science
한국학	Korean Studies	인문과학	humanities
어학	Language Studies	사회과학	social sciences
문학	Literature	자연과학	natural sciences
언어학	Linguistics	공학	Engineering
영어영문학	English Language & Literature	수학	Mathematics
역사학	History	의학	Medicine
정치학	political Science	-대학	Faculty of ...
경제학	Economics	문과대학	Arts Faculty
경영학	Business Studies	경영대학	Business Faculty
법학	Law	교육대학	Faculty of Education
교육학	Education	-과	teaching department
철학	Philosophy	한국학과	the Korean department

## 7 The Particle -만 (only ...)

The particle -만 (*only*) replaces -이/-가 and -을/-를, but is added to other particles.

도서관에는 태우씨만 갔어요.	Only Tae-U went to library.
저는 일본어를 안 배워요. 한국어만 배워요.	I don't learn Japanese. I only learn Korean.
커피는 집에서만 마셔요.	I drink coffee only at home.
맥주는 주말에만 마셔요.	I drink beer only at weekends.
교실에서는 한국말로만 질문하세요.	Ask questions only in Korean in the classroom.

## 8 I want to ...

When we want to express a strong desire we can say:

**VST - 고 싶어요.**

### EXAMPLES

돈을 많이 벌고 싶어요.	I want to earn a lot of money.
내년에 한국에 가보고 싶어요.	I want to visit Korea next year.
한국 음식을 먹어보고 싶어요.	I want to try Korean dishes.
선영씨와 결혼하고 싶습니다.	I want to marry you, Seon-Yeoung.

But when talking about other people's desires we say:

**(...은/는) VST - 고 싶어해요.**

### EXAMPLES

태우씨는 돈을 많이 벌고 싶어해요.	Tae-U wants to earn a lot of money.
내년에 한국에 가보고 싶어해요.	They want to visit Korea next year.
카일리씨는 한국 음식을 먹어보고 싶어해요.	Kylie wants to try Korean dishes.
지수씨는 선영씨와 결혼하고 싶어해요.	Ji-Su wants to marry Seon-Yeoung.

## 9 AFTER ...

When we want to describe a sequence of events we can link them as follows.

**VST - (으)ㄴ 다음에 ...**

### EXAMPLES

책을 읽은 다음에 물을 마셨어요.	After reading a book I drank water.
한국말을 좀 배운 다음에 한국에 갈 거예요.	After I learn some Korean I will go to Korea.
시드니에서 고등학교를 마친 다음에 멜버른으로 이사갔어요.	After I finished my high school in Sydney I moved to Melbourne.
졸업한 다음에 취직할 거예요.	After I graduate I'll get a job.

## 10 Before ...

Another way of linking a sequence of events is as follows.

**VST - 기 전에 ...**

### EXAMPLES

물을 마시기 전에 책을 읽었어요.	Before drinking water I read a book.
한국에 가기 전에 한국말을 좀 배울 거예요.	I'll learn some Korean before I go to Korea.
멜버른으로 이사가기 전에 시드니에서 고등학교를 다녔어요.	Before moving to Melbourne, I attended a high school in Sydney.
식사하기 전에 맥주 한 잔 어때요?	How about having a glass of beer before we eat?

## 11 Cultural Notes: Education

The South Korean education system follows a 6-3-3 pattern, comprising six years of primary school (초등학교), three years of middle school (중학교), and three years of high school (고등학교). Kindergartens or pre-schools (유치원) are not regarded as part of the formal education system. Primary and middle school education is compulsory and more or less free, and the curriculum includes subjects such as moral education, Korean language, social studies, mathematics, natural science, physical education, music, art and a foreign language (English). Upon completing primary school students enter middle school for Years 7–9 of their secondary education. Middle school students are usually aged between twelve and fourteen. For the final three years of secondary education, students enter high schools. In the mid-1980s, 96% of middle school graduates were going on to high school, and the rate has been steady ever since. There are two types of high school, academic high school for further general education and vocational high school, where more specialised vocational training (agriculture, fishing, industrial trades etc) is incorporated into the curriculum.

For several years before high school graduation the life of the Korean student is dominated by the need to prepare for *university admission examinations* (수능시험). The exams mostly involve multiple choice-type answers to questions across a curriculum so broad as to require many hours of daily study during this period. The effort usually involves the whole household, with parents and other family members taking special care to ensure their children obtain the best possible result. The pressure for entering a good university is intense, often depriving the students of any real social life, the system is frequently criticised by Korean educationalists because of this, but the country remains locked into the system.

Alongside the undoubted down-side to the pressure, it should be mentioned that while there are more than a few casualties, successful Korean graduates approach working life with a strongly disciplined and well acculturated background, and the country's economic transformation could hardly have been achieved without the cohesive and talented professional class that this system has produced.

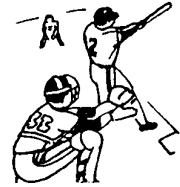
Most leading Korean universities and other institutes of higher education are private institutions, but come under the supervision of the Ministry of Education – as, of course, do the primary and secondary schools. Public universities, or National Universities as they are known, operate one to each province of the country, and tend to be the first choice of intending students over rival private institutions. Particularly noteworthy in this regard is Seoul National University (서울대학교, or 서울대 for short), whose graduates all but monopolise leading professions such as law, banking, education and the public service. While it is not always helpful to compare institutions, at least in the social sciences and humanities SNU is universally regarded as pre-eminent. Other prominent institutions include Yonsei University (연세대학교, or 연대 for short), Korea University (고려대학교, or 고대 for short), and Sogang University (서강대학교, or 서강대 for short) in Seoul, and Pusan National University (부산대학교, or 부산대) in Pusan. In science and technology institutions such as the Korean Advanced Institute of Science and Technology (KAIST) and Pohang Institute of Science and Technology (Postech) are also highly regarded.

There are some significant differences between Korean and Western university life. As huge demand for tertiary places in a predominantly private system produces huge class sizes, courses comprise of mass lectures and no tutorials; there is in general little in the way of intellectual contact between staff and students. Also, extra-curricular activities assume greater significance. Students form their own little study groups, usually revolving around social, political or religious issues. A good deal of energy is also poured into sporting and hobby clubs and societies. The university thus becomes the centre of student social life even on weekends and in holiday periods, and the sense of attachment to alma mater is very strong. It is often observed that the achievement of the Korean education system is to be found, not in the education it imparts, but in the socialisation process that Korean students go through (which is in part responsible for the intense pressure for entering a good university).

## 15 야구할 줄 알아요?

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Sports, Hobbies, Games and Pastimes
- Do you know how to ...?
- The Auxiliary Verb: VST - 아/어/...해 보-
- Have you (ever) ...?
- Would you like to ...
- Using Description Verbs: Modifying Nouns



### CAN YOU PLAY BASEBALL?

Talking about the sports, activities, hobbies and pastimes we enjoy is another very basic way of communicating information about ourselves. In this Unit we learn to talk about these things.

#### 1 Do you (know how to) ...?



Q: 축구할 줄 알아요?  
A: 네, 알아요.



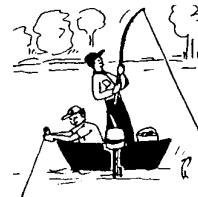
Q: 춤출 줄 알아요?  
A: 조금 알아요.



Q: 바둑 잘 두세요?  
A: 글썄요, 잘 못 뒹요.



Q: 노래 잘 하세요?  
A: 아니요, 못 해요.



Q: 낚시 좋아하세요?  
A: 네, 아주 좋아해요.



Q: 카드 놀이할 줄 알아요?  
A: 아니요, 몰라요.



Q: 파도타기 해 봤어요?  
A: 아직 못 해 봤어요.



## 2 Sports, Hobbies, Games and Pastimes

배구	volleyball	취미	hobby
농구	basketball	놀이	game
야구	baseball	바둑	Baduk ( <i>Korean 'Go' game</i> )
축구	football/soccer	장기	Janggi ( <i>Korean Chess</i> )
탁구	ping pong	우표 수집	stamp collecting
수영	swimming	독서	reading
권투	boxing	낚시	fishing
파도타기	surf riding	등산	mountain climbing
승마	horse-riding	경마	horse racing

## 3 Some Verbs

탁구(를) 치-	play (Lit. <i>strike, hit</i> ) ping pong	인기(가) 있-	popular
춤(을) 추-	dance (a dance)	사진(을) 찍-	take photos
노래(를) 하-/부르-	sing (a song)	축구(를) 하-	play soccer
바둑(을) 두-	play (Lit. <i>place, put</i> ) Baduk	낚시(를) 하-	go fishing
장기(를) 두-	play Janggi	운전하-	drive

### Vocabulary Expansion: Guessing the meaning of words

테니스	tennis	골프	golf
미식 축구	American football	보울링	bowling
호주식 축구	Australian football	자전거	bicycling
럭비	rugby	카드 놀이	card game/cards
크리켓	cricket	피아노	piano
스키	skiing	기타	guitar

### LANGUAGE NOTES: 피아노를 치- (hitting the piano)

Korean uses the verb 하- (*do*), not 놀- (*play*), in talking about playing various sports and musical instruments. However, in the case of sports that require, generally speaking, the hitting of a ball, or in the case of playing musical instruments with the fingers, Korean uses the verb 치- (*strike, hit*). Thus, 골프 (*golf*), 테니스 (*tennis*), 탁구 (*ping pong*), 배드민턴 (*badminton*), 기타 (*guitar*), 피아노 (*piano*), etc are all used with the verb 치-, ie “...을/를 쳐요”.

## 4 Do you know how to ...

When asking about activities requiring knowledge or training, we can say:

... VST - (으)ㄴ 줄 알아요?

### EXAMPLES

야구 할 줄 아세요?	Do you know how to play baseball?
피아노 칠 줄 아세요?	Do you know how to play the piano?
한자를 쓸 줄 아세요?	Can you write Chinese?
춤 줄 아세요?	Can you dance?

### Yes, I know how to ...

To answer in the positive we can say

네, ... VST (으)ㄴ 줄 알아요.

### EXAMPLES

네, 할 줄 알아요.	Yes, I know how to play rugby.
피아노 칠 줄 알아요.	I know how to play the piano.
한자를 쓸 줄 알아요.	I can write Chinese.
네, 춤을 줄 줄 알아요.	Yes, I can dance.

### I don't know how to ...

And in the negative

아니오, ... VST - (으)ㄴ 줄 몰라요.

### EXAMPLES

럭비 할 줄 몰라요.	I don't know how to play rugby.
피아노 칠 줄 몰라요.	I don't know how to play the piano.
아니오, 한자를 쓸 줄 몰라요.	No, I can't write Chinese.
춤을 줄 줄 몰라요.	I can't dance.

### Other options ...

...(을/를) 잘 하- be good at/do something well	...(을/를) 잘 못 하- be not really good at ...
...(을/를) 조금 하- do something slightly	...(을/를) 못 하- be no good at all at ...

In responding to ‘... VST - (으)ㄴ 줄 알아요?’ questions, you may be tempted to say: “네, 조금 해요. (intending to mean *Yes, a little*)”. However, this in fact sounds a bit haughty in Korean, possibly because of its affirmative aspect, i.e., “네, ... 해요”. A more standard, modest response would be: “잘 못 해요. (Lit. *I can't do it very well*).” Here, 잘 is the key – without it you simply mean that you can't.

A definite disclaimer of any ability in the field under discussion is “잘 해요. (Lit. *(He/She) does it well*).” Of course, we can't say this about ourselves without sounding boastful, but we can use it to describe other people's abilities.

## 5 More Expressions

공	ball	혼자서	by oneself
라켓	racquet	제일	first, the most ...
태권도	Tae-Kwon-Do	힘들-	hard, difficult
선수	competitor	신문	newspaper
선수단/팀	team	잡지	magazine
시합	contest, match	편지	letter
대회	sports tournament	쓰-	write
운동장	sports field	음악	music
경기	contest/race	듣-	listen to

**Language Notes:** • The vowel — in 쓰- (use) drops out when attaching the -어요 ending, and thus 편지를 써요;  
• Also the ㄷ in 듣- (listen to) changes to ㄹ when attaching -어요, and thus 음악을 들어요.

## 6 The Auxiliary Verb: VST - 아/어/...해 보-

The verb 보- (*see*) can be attached to another verb, adding some abstract sense of ‘trial’, ‘experience’, etc. In effect, the attached 보- indicates that we perform an action (as indicated by the preceding verb) while we are non-committal about the outcome. We’ve already met such an example; 먹어 보- as in “김치를 먹어 봤어요? (*Have you tried the Gimchi?*)” which literally means *Did you eat kimchi and see (what it was like)?* Look at the contrast between the following pairs.

그 책을 읽었어요?	Did you read that book?
그 책을 읽어 봤어요?	Did you have a look at that book?
그 노래를 들었어요?	Did you listen to that CD?
그 노래를 들어 봤어요?	Did you have a listen to that CD?
파도타기 해 봤어요?	Did you have a try for surfing?
파도타기 했어요?	Did you surf?

## 7 The Expression 파도타기

There are a few ways of changing a verb into a noun, and the suffix -기, as in 파도타기, is one of them. It has a similar effect of attaching *-ing* in English.

타-	ride	파도(를) 타-	surf (Lit. <i>ride waves</i> )
타기	riding	파도타기	surfing (Lit. <i>wave-riding</i> )

We can then say, for example:

파도타기를 좋아하세요?	Do you like surfing?
파도타기가 어때요?	What’s surfing like?
파도타기는 재미있지만 좀 어려워요.	Surfing is fun but is a little bit difficult.
파도타기를 해 보고 싶어요.	I’d like to try surfing.

## 8 Some More Expressions

혼자서 하는 운동	a solo sport	수영장	swimming pool
두 사람이 하는 운동	a sport for two players	수영복	swim wear
여러 사람이 하는 운동	a team sport	올림픽 대회	Olympic Games
야구 선수단	baseball team	권투시합	boxing match
테니스 선수	a tennis player	축구시합	soccer match
홍명보 선수	‘Competitor’ Hong Myung-Bo	매일	everyday
야구 경기	baseball tournament/match	자주	frequently, often
경기장	a sports arena	가끔	occasionally, sometime
테니스(경기)장	tennis court	별로 안 ...	not especially

**Cultural Note:** Hong Myung-Bo was an internationally famous Korean soccer star of the 1990s and early 2000s.

## 9 Have you ever ...?

A common ways to ask someone about their past experiences:

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{VST - 아/어} \\ \dots\text{해} \end{array} \right\}$  본 일(이) 있어요?

NOTE: 적 may be substituted for 일.

### EXAMPLES

한국에 가 본 일 있어요?	Have you ever been to Korea?
한국음식을 먹어 본 일이 있어요?	Have you ever tried Korea food?
미식 축구를 구경해 본 일이 있어요?	Have you ever seen American football?
김치를 만들어 본 적이 있어요?	Have you ever tried to make kimchi?

### Yes, I have / No, I haven't

To answer, we can simply say

네, 있어요. / 아니오, 없어요.

## 10 Would you like to ...

A common way of suggesting things to other people is to say

VST - (으)실래요?

### EXAMPLES

오늘 저녁, 파티에 가실래요?	Would you like to go to a party tonight?
아르바이트 해 보실래요?	How would you like a part-time job?
그럼, 다음 주에 다시 오실래요?	Well then – would you like to come again next week?
콜라 좀 주실래요?	May I have a cola? (Lit. <i>Would you like to give me a cola?</i> )

## 11 Using Description Verbs: Modifying Nouns

We've learnt how to say in Korean, eg *It's delicious*, *It's hot*, *It's difficult*, *It's good*, etc. We choose an appropriate description verb and attach endings, as we do with action verbs. We thus say 맛 있어요, 더워요, 어려워요, 좋아요, etc.

Let us learn how to use description verbs to modify nouns, as in *a hot day*, *a difficult matter*, and so on. There are three rules to remember:

### 1. With description verb stems ending in 있- and 없-, we add 는

#### EXAMPLE

맛 있-	+ 는 ⇒	맛 있는	맛 있는 음식	tasty food
맛 없-		맛 없는	맛 없는 음식	unappetising food
재미 있-		재미 있는	재미 있는 이야기	interesting stories
재미 없-		재미 없는	재미 없는 이야기	boring stories

### 2. With description verb stems that end in ㅁ, ㅂ changes to 우, to which we then add ㄴ.

#### EXAMPLE

맵-	drop ㅁ + 우 ⇒	매운	매운 김치	hot Gimchi
춥-		추운	추운 나라	cold country
어렵-		어려운	어려운 운동	a difficult sport
쉽-		쉬운	쉬운 과목	an easy subject
반갑-		반가운	반가운 사람	a pleasing person

### 3. With all other description verb stems (with minor exceptions) we add ㄴ after vowels, 은 after consonants.

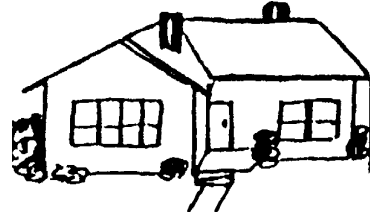
#### EXAMPLE

괜찮-	+ 은 ⇒	괜찮은	괜찮은 시험	an 'OK' exam
좋-		좋은	좋은 음식	good food
많-		많은	많은 사람	many people
따뜻하-	+ ㄴ ⇒	따뜻한	따뜻한 국	warm soup
유명하-		유명한	유명한 학교	a famous school
비싸-		비싼	비싼 술	an expensive liquor

## 16 우리 집이에요.

IN THIS UNIT ...

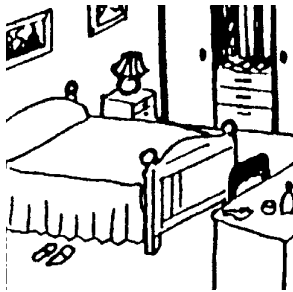
- Describing where we live
- Housework
- Adjectival clauses



THIS IS WHERE I LIVE.

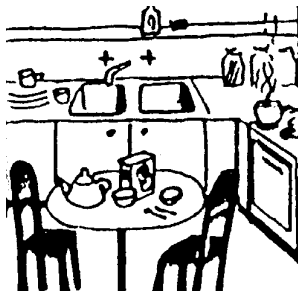
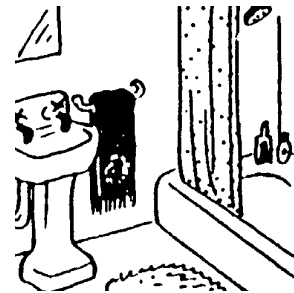
In this unit we learn how to talk about where we live – our accommodation and our neighbourhood. We also take an important step forward in increasing our powers of expression in Korean by learning how to describe actions, situations and states using adjectival clauses.

### 1 This is my room.



여기는 내 침실이에요. 내  
침실에는 침대하고 옷장, 책상,  
책장이 있어요. 의자도 물론  
있어요. 아침에 청소를 해서 아주  
깨끗해요.

아, 여기는 화장실이에요.



여기는 부엌이에요. 싱크대, 오븐,  
식탁이 있어요. 냉장고는 저기  
있어요. 자, 앉으세요. 커피 한 잔  
하실래요?

**LANGUAGE NOTE:** The pattern "... VST - 아/어/...해 - 서" conveys the meaning: *because ....* (We've in fact met this pattern already in 늦어서 미안합니다 (*Sorry I'm late*) in Page 4.) Thus, 아침에 청소를 해서 아주 깨끗해요 in the text means "*Because I did the cleaning this morning, my room is very clean.*"

## 2 Rooms and Places

침실	bedroom	부엌	kitchen
거실	family room	식당	dining room
응접실	sitting room	현관	entry (of a house)
(목)욕실	bathroom	차고	garage
세탁실	laundry room	정원	garden

## 3 More Rooms, Places, etc

방	room	2층집 (SK)	two-storey house
온돌방	room with under-floor heating	집세	house/flat rent
발코니	balcony	(집세를) 내-	pay the rent
아파트	apartment, flat	이웃집	the house next door
마당	(back)yard	이웃집 사람	next door neighbour

## 4 Some Description Verbs

깨끗하-	clean	조용하-	quiet
더럽-	dirty	가깝-	nearby
시끄럽-	noisy	멀-	far away

### LANGUAGE NOTES: Distances from a point

When we want to say how far one location is from another we use -에서 as follows.

집이 역에서 멀어요?	Is the house far from the station?
우체국은 은행에서 멀어요?	Is the post office far from the bank?

We can, of course, just as easily ask how near they are to each other.

집은 역에서 가까워요?	Is the house near the station?
우체국이 은행에서 가까워요?	Is the post office near the bank?

## 5 Furniture and Fittings

침대	bed	식탁	dining table
옷장	wardrobe	스탠드	(standing) lamp
찬장	cupboard	책상	desk
싱크대	kitchen sink	책장	bookcase

## 6 Household Appliances and Equipment

냉장고	refrigerator	접시	plates, dishes
전자-	electronic	식기세척기	dishwasher
전자렌지	microwave oven, electric stove	세탁기	washing machine
가스렌지	gas stove	다리미	iron (appliance)
오븐	oven	청소기	vacuum cleaner

## 7 Some Action Verbs

세탁(을) 하-	wash clothes, do the washing	청소(를) 하-	clean, dust
다림질(을) 하-	do the ironing	정원가꾸기(를) 하-	do the gardening
설겅이(를) 하-	wash dishes, do the washing up	목욕(을) 하-	have a bath

## 8 How Often ...?

Next are ‘adverbs of frequency’, words that tell us how often things are done, some of which we’ve studied already. On the left is a scale 100 – 0 to give you a very general idea of frequency, where 100 indicates *all the time* and 0 *never*.

Note that *별로*, *좀처럼* and *전혀* are always used with *안*, ie they occur in a negative sentence. For example, we say *그 사람은 청소를 좀처럼 안 해요* (*He/she rarely cleans his/her room*).

100	언제나	always
75	보통	usually
50	자주	often
25	가끔	sometimes
10	별로 (+ Negative)	not especially
5	좀처럼 (+ Negative)	rarely
0	전혀 (+ Negative)	never



You'll also find useful to know the following expressions. (For how to refer to periods of time, see Page 76.)

날마다	everyday	사흘에 한 번	once every third day
매일	everyday	일 주일에 한 번	once a week
매달	every month	한 달에 한 번	once a month
매년	every year	일 년에 한 번	once a year
이틀에 한 번	once every second day	일 년에 두 번	twice a year

## 9 Telephone INSA

Using the telephone can often seem like the most daunting of tasks in a new language. However, the following phrases might at least help you to get to first base.

The standard phrase in answering the telephone, equivalent to 'Hello.' is:

여보세요. *Hello.*

If you're calling a private number, then you'll want to ask for the person you're calling:

여보세요, 김기현 선생님 계세요? *Hello, is Mr Kim Gi-Hyun there?*

Or, if you feel fairly sure that you're already speaking to Mr Kim you can confirm this by saying:

여보세요, 김선생님이세요? *Hello, is that Mr Kim?*

If you're coming through a switchboard you can ask to be connected to an extension number by saying:

여보세요, 1, 2, 3, 4번이요 (SK). *Hello, (connect me to extension) 1234, please.*

Or you can ask for the individual concerned:

여보세요, 김기현 선생님 좀 바꿔 주세요. *Hello, please connect me with Mr Kim Gi-Hyun.*

We'll deal with other possible situations later on in this course, but it's worth mentioning that Korean telephone etiquette may seem rather abrupt compared with, say, Western phone etiquette. When the conversation finishes, for example, you may observe people simply hanging up without any 'Goodbye'! You may from time to time hear people saying 끊어요, which literally means *I disconnect the line*.

## 10 Korean Addresses

Following is the address of Yonsei University, written in Korean. Note that in contrast to Western practice it works from the broadest unit to the most particular. That is, where we would use the order *house number – street – suburb – city – state – country*, Korean would use the reverse order. In order, the units in a Korean address are generally -도 (province), -시 (city), -구 (district), -동 (ward), followed by a house or apartment number. Street numbers are rarely referred to. Thus Yonsei University is located in Seoul (서울특별시 – the official administrative title for Seoul), Seodaemun ('West Gate') District, Sinchon ('New Village') Ward, Number 134.

서울특별시 서대문구 신촌동 134번지 연세대학교

## 11 Adjectival Phrases and Clauses

We've already seen how we can modify nouns using description verbs (see Page 91):

좋은 사람	a good person	재미 있는 이야기	an interesting story
더운 나라	a hot country	맛 있는 음식	a delicious food

Now we see how Korean uses action verbs in the same way.

### Completed Actions

When modifying a noun with a completed, or perfected, action:

**AVST - (으)ㄴ NOUN ...**

#### EXAMPLE

가-	+ ㄴ ⇒	간
오-		온
받-	+ 은 ⇒	받은
읽-		읽은

간 버스 the bus that has gone

온 손님 the guest who came

내가 받은 편지 the letter I received

내가 읽은 책 the book that I read

### Sentence building

옷 clothes  
 미아가 산 옷 The clothes that Mia bought ...  
 미아가 백화점에서 산 옷 The clothes Mia bought in the department store ...  
 미아가 백화점에서 산 옷은 아주 멋 있어요.  
 The clothes that Mia bought in the department store are very stylish.

### Current Actions

When modifying a noun with a current action:

**AVST - 는 NOUN ...**

We've already seen phrases like 민속촌 가는 버스 (see Page 68), where the verb ending -는 corresponds to 'which is (go)ing' in the translation 'a bus which is going to the Folk Village'. While English uses a variety of relative pronouns: who, whom, that, which, when, etc, Korean simply applies the relevant verb-endings, depending on whether we are referring to completed, current or potential actions.

#### EXAMPLE

가-	+ 는 ⇒	가는
모르-		모르는
먹-		먹는
읽-		읽는

서울 가는 기차 the train that goes to Seoul

내가 모르는 사람 someone that I don't know

태우가 못 먹는 음식 the food that Tae-U can't eat

언니가 읽는 책 the book that my elder sister reads

## Sentence building

	책	book
	여동생이 읽는 책	The book that my younger sister's reading ...
	여동생이 방에서 읽는 책	The book that my younger sister's reading in her room ...
	여동생이 방에서 읽는 책은 아주 재미 있어요.	
	The book that my younger sister's reading in her room is really interesting.	

## Potential Actions

When modifying a noun with a potential action:

AVST - (으)ㄹ NOUN ...

## EXAMPLE

하-	+ ㄹ ⇒	할
쓰-		쓸
받-	+ 을 ⇒	받을
먹-		먹을

할 일	something to do
내일 볼 시험	the exam that I'm going to take tomorrow
다음 주에 받을 돈	the money that I'm going to receive next week
오후에 먹을 음식	the food that I'm going to eat in the afternoon

## Sentence building

	음식	food ...
	먹을 음식	The food we're going to eat ...
	내일 저녁 때 먹을 음식	The food we're going to eat tomorrow evening ...
	내일 저녁 때 먹을 음식은 불고기예요.	The food we're going to eat tomorrow evening is Bulgogi.

## Language Notes

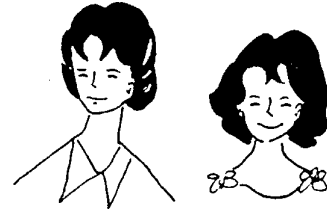
- An action verb whose stem ends in ㄹ requires a special attention: the ㄹ drops before -(으)ㄴ, -는 or -(으)ㄹ ending is attached. Consider the table below.
- In the table below, notice also how the verb stem 들- changes when -(으)ㄴ or -(으)ㄹ ending is attached. We suggest you treat the verb 들- as irregular, as indicated by the regular 'conjugation' pattern of resembling verbs such as 받- and 쓰-.

Stem (Meaning)	Adjectival Phrases/Clauses			Polite Informal		Polite Formal	
	Completed	Current	Potential	Present	Past	Present	Past
알- (know)	안 ...	아는 ...	알 ...	알아요	알았어요	압니다	알았습니다
만들- (make)	만든 ...	만드는 ...	만들 ...	만들어요	만들었어요	만듭니다	만들었습니다
살- (live)	산 ...	사는 ...	살 ...	살아요	살았어요	삽니다	살았습니다
벌- (earn (money))	번 ...	버는 ...	벌 ...	벌어요	벌었어요	법니다	벌었습니다
들- (listen, hear)	들은 ...	듣는 ...	들을 ...	들어요	들었어요	들습니다	들었습니다
받- (receive)	받은 ...	받는 ...	받을 ...	받아요	받았어요	받습니다	받았습니다
쓰- (write, use)	쓴 ...	쓰는 ...	쓸 ...	써요	썼어요	씁니다	썼습니다

## 17 엄마를 닮은 것 같아요.

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Describing people and things
- Colours and clothing



SHE LOOKS LIKE HER MOTHER.

In this unit we learn more about how to describe people and things, and also how to make comparisons.

### 1 It seems/looks like ...



돼지 같아요.



구두 같아요.



포도 같아요.



낚시를 하는 것 같아요.



피아노를 치는 것 같아요.



기차를 타는 것 같아요.

## 2 Clothing and Accessories I

바지	pants, slacks	안경	glasses
청바지	jeans	지갑	wallet, purse
치마	skirt	목걸이	necklace
저고리	jacket	귀걸이	earrings
스커트	skirt	반지	ring
와이셔츠	business shirt	시계	watch
티셔츠	T-shirt	속옷	underwear
구두	(leather) shoes	양말	socks
넥타이	necktie	양복	suit
모자	hat, cap	한복	Korean clothes

### LANGUAGE NOTES

• 저고리 refers only to the Korean traditional upper outer garment • 청- is a Sino-Korean expression, meaning *blue* • 목 = *neck* • 걸이 derives from the verb 걸-, *to hang*, and thus means literally *a hanger* • 속 = *inside* • -복 = *set of clothes*

## 3 Clothing and Accessories II

스웨터	sweater	장갑	gloves
자켓	jacket	신발	shoes
오버/코트	coat, overcoat	운동화	sneakers
드레스	dress	짧은 바지	shorts
원피스	one-piece dress	내의	underwear
투피스	two-piece dress	교복	school uniform
스카프	scarf	수영복	swimming suit

### LANGUAGE NOTES

• When referring to a coat, you say either 오버 or 코트 (not 오버코트) in Korean • 짧은 바지 seems straightforward; also frequently used for *shorts* is 반바지 • 교 in 교복 is obviously from 학교

## 4 Action Verbs: Wearing Things, etc.

PUT ON ...		TAKE OFF ...
입-	clothes	
쓰-	hat, glasses	
신-	footwear	
하-	necktie, scarf, necklace, earrings	벗-

### LANGUAGE NOTES: Korean Verbs of ‘wearing’

- It would be useful to know at this stage that for 반지 (*ring*) and 장갑 (*gloves*), you use 끼- (*fit in/into*) in case of putting it on, and 빼- (*take out*) in case of taking it off. Note also that with 시계 (*watch*) you use 차- (*attach, fasten on*) and 벗- (*take off*).
- All the verbs in the list indicate the process of ‘putting on’ or ‘taking off’ something, and thus you use them with the perfect tense marker -았/-었/...했 if you want to say that someone is/is not wearing something (see Examples below). This is to indicate, as it were, that we are describing the outcome of a process, rather than a state in itself. To say that someone was wearing something at a point in time in the past, you use the perfect tense marker -았/-었/...했 twice (see Examples below).

### EXAMPLES

오늘은 청바지를 입었어요.	He is wearing blue jeans today.
하지만 어제는 짧은 바지를 입었었어요.	But he was wearing shorts yesterday.
이상한 모자를 썼어요.	She is wearing a strange hat.
운동화를 신었어요.	He's wearing sneakers.
목걸이는 안 했어요.	She's not wearing a necklace.
안경을 벗었어요.	He's taken off his glasses.
반지를 여러 개 껴어요.	She's wearing several rings.
비싼 시계를 샀어요.	He's wearing an expensive watch.

## 5 Colours

색/색깔	colour, tint	파랗-	blue
까맣-	black	초록색	green
검-	black, blackish	밤색	brown
하얗-	white	회색	grey
희-	white, whitish	분홍색	pink
빨갳-	red	핑크색	pink
노랗-	yellow	오렌지색	orange

## LANGUAGE NOTES

- 어느 and 무슨 both mean *Which ...*, and are very close in meaning. We met 어느 in the context of 어느 나라 사람이예요? (*Which country does he come from?*), and basically it asks the listener to designate one of a number of alternatives – equivalent to the English *Which one?*. On the other hand, 무슨, eg 모자는 무슨 색이에요?, seeks a descriptive answer – equivalent to *What type of ...?*.
- Verb stems ending in ㅎ (히읇) are irregular. If you want to say something is black, white, red, etc, you ‘conjugate’ the verb as follows. (1) Drop the stem-final ㅎ, (2) change the vowel ㅏ to ㅓ, and (3) add 요. Thus, “*The trousers are black*” will be 바지가 까매요 in Korean. Note also that when used as a modifier, (1) the stem-final ㅎ drop, and (2) ㄴ (니은) will be added. Thus, ‘*black trousers*’ will be 까만 바지.
- How do we use those colour terms ending in the expression 색 (*colour*)? As modifier, they will simply be placed in front of the noun they modify. Elsewhere, they’ll be used with the verb 이- (*is, are*). Thus, ‘*a green hat*’ and “*The hat is green*” in Korean will be 초록색 모자 and 모자는 초록색이에요, respectively.

## 6 Some Description Verbs

젊-	be young (animate, post adolescent)	크-	big
어리-	be young (animate, pre-adolescent)	키가 크-	tall
늙었-	be old (animate)	작-	small
늙았-	be old (inanimate)	키가 작-	short (in height)
닮았-	resemble/take after (in appearance)	예쁘-	pretty
잘 생겼-	be handsome	아름답-	beautiful
잘 못 생겼-	be ugly	짧-	short (in length)
오래되었-	old-fashioned, timeworn (inanimate)	길-	long

## LANGUAGE NOTES

- Note that some of the verbs above, chiefly related to processes involving growth and the ageing process, uniformly take the perfect tense marker 았/었-/· ·했-. This is to indicate that we are describing the outcome of a process, rather than a state in itself.

## EXAMPLES

그 사람은 늙었어요.	He's old.
그 차는 낡았어요.	The car's old.
아기가 잘 생겼어요!	What a handsome (lit. well-shaped) child!
저는 외할아버지를 닮았어요.	I've taken after my (maternal) grandfather.

## 7 More Useful Expressions

입어 보-	try on clothes	시원해 보이-	(looking) refreshing
입고 다니-	go around wearing	날씬해 보이-	(looking) slim
화장을 하-	put on make-up	젊어 보이-	(looking) young
디자인	design	편안해 보이-	(looking) comfortable
무늬	a pattern, figure	우아하-	elegant

## 8 Making Comparisons: the Particle 보다

When we want to compare things, eg A is better than B, we use 보다 as follows.

**A - 가 B - 보다 (더) 좋아요.**

### EXAMPLES

빨간색이 분홍색보다 더 좋아요.	Red is better than pink.
바지보다 치마가 더 예뻐요.	Skirts are prettier than trousers.
설악산은 지리산보다 아름다워요.	Seorak-san is more beautiful than Jiri-san.
대구보다 부산이 커요.	Busan is bigger than Daegu.

## 9 More about Negatives

We've already met the negative adverb 안, which precedes the verb stem. This has another form:

- 날씨가 안 추워요. = 날씨가 춥지 않아요.
- 애니는 김치를 안 먹어요. = 애니는 김치를 먹지 않아요.
- 저는 안 가요. = 저는 가지 않아요.
- 저는 안 가겠어요. = 저는 가지 않겠어요.

안 VST and VST-지 않- are almost identical in meaning, though the VST-지 않- construction is slightly more emphatic in effect.

## 10 It's rather ...

Likewise, when we want to be less forthright we can say

**... DVST - (으)ㄴ 편이에요.**

NOTE: 편 = side, aspect

### EXAMPLES

캔버라는 좀 추운 편이에요.	Canberra is a bit on the cold side.
이 김치는 좀 매운 편이에요.	This kimchi's rather hot.
영수는 키가 큰 편이에요.	Yongsu's rather tall.
아기가 엄마를 안 닮은 편이에요.	The baby looks more like her father (than her mother).



## 11 IT SEEMS AS IF ...

### With Actions

When we are conjecturing about a state of affairs we can say

... AVST -  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} (으)ㄴ \\ \text{는} \\ (으)ㄹ \end{array} \right\}$  - 것 같아요.

NOTE: For completed actions, use AVST - (으)ㄴ 것 같아요; for uncompleted actions, AVST - 는 것 같아요; for potential actions, AVST (으)ㄹ 것 같아요.

#### EXAMPLES

비가 온 것 같아요.

It seems to have rained.

비가 오는 것 같아요.

It seems to be raining.

비가 올 것 같아요.

It seems as though it's going to rain.

### With Descriptions

When our conjecture involves description verbs, we can say

... DVST -  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} (으)ㄴ \\ (으)ㄹ \end{array} \right\}$  것 같아요.

NOTE: to refer to past or on-going experience, use -(으)ㄴ 것 같아요; when conjecturing what something/someone might be like, use -(으)ㄹ 것 같아요.

#### EXAMPLES

이 김치는 좀 매운 것 같아요.

This kimchi seems a little bit hot.

이 김치는 좀 매울 것 같아요.

This kimchi may be a little bit hot.

바지가 좀 큰 것 같아요.

The trousers seem a little bit big.

바지가 좀 클 것 같아요.

The trousers may be a little bit big.

### With the verbs: 이-/아니- and 있-/없-

Note that 이-, 아니-, 있- and 없- combine with 것 같아요 as follows.

$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{이-} \\ \text{아니-} \end{array} \right\}$  becomes either  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{인 것 같아요} \\ \text{아닌 것 같아요} \end{array} \right\}$  or  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{일 것 같아요.} \\ \text{아닐 것 같아요.} \end{array} \right\}$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{있-} \\ \text{없-} \end{array} \right\}$  becomes either  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{있는 것 같아요} \\ \text{없는 것 같아요} \end{array} \right\}$  or  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{있을 것 같아요.} \\ \text{없을 것 같아요.} \end{array} \right\}$

#### EXAMPLES

고양이인 것 같아요.

It looks like a cat.

고양이일 것 같아요.

It'll be a cat, I guess.

개가 아닌 것 같아요.

It doesn't look like a dog.

개가 아닐 것 같아요.

It doesn't look as though it'll be a dog.

그 사람은 돈이 없는 것 같아요.

He/She seems to have no money.

오늘은 시간이 좀 있을 것 같아요.

It looks as though I'll have time today.

# 18 어디서 살 거예요?

## IN THIS UNIT ...

- Goods for Sale, Shops, Businesses, etc
- Talking about the Act of Giving/Receiving
- Future time words
- Introductory Statements
- I've come to ...
- If ...; If you want to ...



## WHERE WILL YOU GET IT?

Going shopping is of course a basic human activity, and one that requires interaction and possibly negotiation with shop staff and others. Various facets of our previous study are brought to bear on this topic, eg using Korean numbers (Units 5 & 6), asking questions such as 'How much is it?' (Unit 8), finding out where places are located (Unit 9), getting around on public transport (Unit 12), basic Insa (Unit 1), and describing things (Unit 14). In this Unit we also learn how to describe the acts of giving and receiving.

## 1 Conversation

Annie is talking to a shop keeper.

Shop Keeper: 어서 오세요.

Annie: 안녕하세요. 기념품을 사러 왔는데요.

Shop Keeper: 네, 구경하세요.

Annie: 저 그림 얼마짜이예요?

Shop Keeper: 어느 거요?

Annie: 저기 도자기 옆에 있는 그림들이요.

Shop Keeper: 네, 8,000 원짜이예요.

Annie: 8,000 원이요? 이걸 얼마예요?

Shop Keeper: 그 것도 한 개에 8,000 원짜이예요.

Annie: 좀 비싼데요. 저 ... 여러 개를 사면 값을 좀 싸게 해 주세요?

Shop Keeper: 몇 개 사실 거예요?

Annie: 세 개 살 거예요.

Shop Keeper: 세 개요? 음 ... 22,000 원 주세요.

Annie: 너무 비싸요. 한 개에 6,000 원짜으로 주세요.

Shop Keeper: 그건 안 돼요, 손님.

Annie: 그럼, 하나만 주세요.

Shop Keeper: 네, 여기 있어요. 그리고 이 가방 가져가세요. 서비스예요.

Annie: 감사합니다. 수고하세요.

## Language Notes

- 얼마씩 ...?: When we want to know the price per unit of goods we use **씩**, which means 'per unit'. Thus the question 얼마씩이에요? (*How much each?*) is answered in the dialogue by 8,000 원씩이에요 (*8,000 won each*).
- 여러 ...: 여러 means *several*, and indicates a general plural number. Two of the most common usages are 여러분, ... when address a group of people, and 여러 가지 (*several kinds*) when indicating that a certain item comes in a variety of forms.
- 싸게 해 주세요?: You've probably noticed that Korean has no clear equivalent to the English *Please* .... In fact, the sense of *Please* is indicated by adding the verb **주-** to VST - **아/어-** or to **해-**. Thus 싸게 해 주세요 means literally *Give me (the favour of) doing it*. We cover this grammatical construction in detail later on in the course.
- 서비스예요.: Many shopping transactions in Korea conclude with the customer being offered some little extra item as a gift. 서비스예요 literally means *It's (part of our) service*, or in English ... *with our compliments*.

## Translation

Shop Keeper:	Welcome.
Annie:	Hello, I've come to buy some souvenirs.
Shop Keeper:	Sure, look around.
Annie:	How much are those pictures each?
Shop Keeper:	Which ones?
Annie:	Those ones next to ceramics.
Shop Keeper:	Right. 8,000 won apiece.
Annie:	8,000 won? How much are these ones?
Shop Keeper:	They're 8,000 won apiece too.
Annie:	That's a bit expensive. If I buy several, will you make them cheaper for me?
Shop Keeper:	How many will you take?
Annie:	I'll take three.
Shop Keeper:	Three? Hmm ... 22,000 won.
Annie:	Too expensive. 6,000 won apiece.
Shop Keeper:	That won't do.
Annie:	Just give me one, then.
Shop Keeper:	OK. There you are. And here's a bag with our compliments.
Annie:	Thank you. Goodbye.

## 2 Goods for Sale

물건	goods	치약	toothpaste
값	price	칫솔	toothbrush
기념품	souvenirs	노트	notebook
도자기	ceramics	종이	paper
가구	furniture	인형	doll
가방	bag, case	지도	map
꽃	flower	식품	food items
꽃병	vase	장난감	toys
화장품	cosmetics	그림	picture
비누	soap	우산	umbrella
약	medicine	우표	stamps

### 3 Shops & Businesses, etc

상가	shopping centre	꽃집	flower shop
미장원	beauty shop	빵집	bread shop
옷가게	clothing store	문방구점	stationery shop
사진관	photo studio	양복점	tailor
책방	book shop	양장점	dressmaker
약방	pharmacy	식품점	grocery store
구두방	shoe shop	정육점	butcher
PC방	'PC Cafe'	가구점	furniture shop

#### Language Notes

For some shops there may be a difference between the way we refer to them in conversation and the way they are referred to in the written language - on actual shop signs, for example. The following written forms are presented for your information.

SPOKEN FORM	WRITTEN FORM	TRANSLATION
미장원	미용실	beautician
빵집	제과점	cake, confectionery shop
꽃집	화원	florist
책방	서림/서적/문고	book shop
약방/약국	약국	chemist/pharmacy
구두방	양화점	shoe shop
문방구점	문방구/문구	stationery shop

### 4 Some Verbs

쇼핑을 하-	go shopping	약을 먹-	take medicine
찾 -	look for	돈이 들-	cost money
기다리-	wait	질이 좋-	good quality
가져가-	take (items with oneself)	멋 있-	stylish, good looking
가져오-	bring (items with oneself)	필요하-	necessary
팔-	sell	편리하-	handy

### 5 Some More Expressions

싸게	cheaply	...씩	per unit, each
여러 가지	several kinds	선물	present(s)
여러 번	several times	제일	the most/best
... 에 따라서	according to ...	일 하-	work

## 6 Talking about the Act of Giving/Receiveing

When we have given something to someone we can say:

... { 한테 }	... 을/를 주었어요.
... { 에게 }	
...께	... 을/를 드렸어요.

### EXAMPLES

태우한테 선물을 주었어요.	I gave a present to Tae-U.
어머니께 선물을 드렸어요.	I gave a present to Mother.
친구에게 책을 주었어요.	I gave a book to my friend.
언니한테 뭘 주었어요?	What did you give to your (elder) sister?

And when we have received something:

... { 한테서 }	... 을/를 받았어요.
... { 에게서 }	

NOTE: -한테서 is more informal than -에게서 but they are generally interchangeable. -한테/-에게 have the honorific form 께, but -한테서/에게서 have no honorific forms.

### EXAMPLES

친구한테서 생일에 책을 받았어요.	I received a book from my friend on my birthday.
어머니한테서 돈을 받았어요.	I received money from Mother.
언니에게서 선물을 받았어요.	I received a present from my (elder) sister.
남동생한테서 뭘 받았어요?	What did you receive from your (younger) brother?

## 7 Future Time-Words

In a week, if today is Tuesday:

Tuesday	오늘
Wednesday	내일
Friday	이번 금요일
Saturday	이번 토요일
Sunday	이번 일요일
Monday	다음 주 월요일
Tuesday	다음 주 화요일

In a year, if this month is October:

September	이번 달
October	내달/다음 달
November	금년 11월
December	금년 12월
January	내년 1월
February	내년 2월

**NOTES:** Saturday and Sunday together = 이번 주말 *this weekend*

## 8 INTRODUCTORY STATEMENTS

When we walk into a shop, or when someone answers our phone call, we usually feel the need to make a preliminary remark explaining our purpose, such as *I saw a nice bag in the window ...* or, in the case of the phone, *This is so-and-so speaking ...* We do this in Korean by using ...데, which may be described as a ‘scene-setter’ This is a form that announces, as it were, what follows is related to the preliminary remark: *I saw a nice bag in the window (– how much is it?)* or, *This is so-and-so speaking, (– is Tae-U there?)*

When the introductory statement is essentially a description of states:

PRESENT STATE: ... DVST - (으)ㄴ 데, ...

PAST STATE: ... { DVST - 았/였 }  
...했 } - 는데, ...

### EXAMPLES

이거 아주 예쁜데, 살까요?	This one's very pretty – shall we buy it?
오늘은 바쁘신데, 내일 오세요.	He (respected person) is busy today – please come tomorrow.
그 모자 괜찮았는데, 왜 안 샀어요?	That hat was good – why didn't you buy it?
어제는 추웠는데, 오늘은 따뜻해요.	Yesterday was cold – and now today it's nice and warm.

When the introductory statement pertains actions:

PRESENT ACTION: ... AVST - 는데, ...

PAST ACTION: ... { AVST - 았/였 }  
...했 } - 는데, ...

### EXAMPLES

비가 오는데, 우산을 가져 가세요.	It's raining – take your umbrella.
버스가 안 오는데, 택시를 타고 갑시다.	The bus isn't coming – let's take a taxi.
숙제를 안 했는데, 어떻게 할까요?	I haven't done my homework – what shall I do?
그 사람을 만났는데, ... 네, 아주 이상한 사람이었어요.	I've met him – yes, he was a strange person.

We can make a ...데 clauses into a complete, Polite Informal sentence by adding 요. This gives a mild exclamatory effect, and, because it is a preliminary remark only, it gives the listener the expectation that something more is to be said – perhaps another remark, an invitation, or simply an implied invitation for the listener to respond.

### EXAMPLES

그거 참 좋은데요.	That's really good.
날씨가 참 좋은데요.	The weather's really nice.
비가 왔는데요.	It's been raining.
비가 오는데요.	It's raining.

## 9 Come/Go ... in order to ...

When we want to explain why (ie in order to do what) we have come or gone somewhere we can say:

... VST - (으)러 ... LOCOMOTIVE VERB

**NOTES:** Locomotive Verbs = verbs such as 오-, 가- and 다니- that show motion from one place to another; -러 corresponds to English *in order to*.

### EXAMPLES

한국어를 공부하러 한국에 왔어요.	I've come to Korea to learn Korean.
친구를 만나러 커피숍에 갔어요.	I went to the coffee shop to meet a friend.
놀러 오세요.	Drop in on us some time. (Lit. <i>Come and relax (with us)</i> . – a standard Korean invitation.)
수학을 배우러 학원에 다녀요.	He/She attends a Hagwon to learn Maths.

## 10 IF ...

When we want to link two clauses with 'If ...' we can say:

... VST - (으)면, ...

### EXAMPLES

비가 오면, 공원에 안 갈 거예요.	If it rains we won't go to the park.
날씨가 좋으면, 산에 갈 거예요.	If the weather's good, we'll go to the mountains.
소고기 값이 비싸면, 돼지고기를 살 거예요.	If the beef is too expensive, we'll buy pork.
빨간 모자가 없으면, 노란 모자를 사세요.	If they don't have a red hat, buy a yellow one.

## 11 If you want to ...

When we want to give guidance to people in this way we can start by saying

... VST - (으)려면, ...

**NOTES:** -(으)려면 = expression of intention; 면 = if ...

### EXAMPLES

물건을 싸게 사려면 남대문 시장에 가세요.	If you want to shop cheaply, go to Namdaemun Market.
고기를 사려면 정육점에 가세요.	If you want to buy meat, go to a butcher.
한국어를 잘 하려면 한국 친구와 연습을 많이 하세요.	If you want to do Korean well, practise with your Korean friend a lot.
비행기표를 사려면 여행사에 가세요.	If you want to buy an airplane ticket, go to a travel agent.

# 19 기분이 어때요?

IN THIS UNIT ...

- Describing feelings, emotions and reactions
- Why ...?



## HOW DO YOU FEEL?

We've learnt a number of basic descriptive verbs that enabled us to describe how we felt about food, learning Korean, sports, neighbourhood, and so on. Now we become more personal, and in this unit we start to learn how to describe our personal feelings and reactions – being happy, sad and so on. We also look at ways of describing other people – are they clever? thick? nice? not so nice? We also start to learn how to show the causal relationship between sentences, asking and answering *Why ...?* questions.

### 1 Some Examples

 <p>기분이 좋아요.</p>	 <p>기분이 나빠요.</p>	 <p>부러워요.</p>	 <p>걱정을 해요.</p>
 <p>신이 났어요.</p>	 <p>불안해요.</p>	 <p>부끄러워요.</p>	 <p>외로워요.</p>
 <p>무서워요.</p>	 <p>놀랐어요.</p>	 <p>답답해요.</p>	 <p>화가 났어요.</p>



## 2 Feelings and Emotions

기쁘-	joyous, happy	답답하-	feel frustrated
슬프-	very sad	갑갑하-	feel frustrated
섭섭하-	sad	겁이 나-	feel afraid
기분	mood, emotional state	화가 나-	feel angry
기분이 좋-	be in a good mood, feel good	불안하-	feel uneasy, nervous
기분이 안 좋-	be in a bad mood,	걱정	worries
기분이 나쁘-	be dissatisfied, down in the dumps	걱정을 하-	feel worried
부럽-	feel envy	놀라-	feel surprised
부끄럽-	feel shy, bashful, shameful	신이 나-	feel elated, on top of the world
외롭-	feel lonely	그립-	miss someone/something

### Language Notes: Describing how other people feel

When we are describing, and asking, how other people feel, we attach to the descriptive verb stem -아/-어/...해하- (Literally, *appear, act, manifest the sign of ...*), as shown in the table below.

DESCRIPTIVE VERB STEM	DESCRIBING THIRD PARTIES	MEANING
부끄럽-	부끄러워하-	appear, act shy
즐겁-	즐거워하-	appear to enjoy
부럽-	부러워하-	appear envy
섭섭하-	섭섭해하-	appear, act sad
슬프-	슬퍼하-	appear, act sad
기쁘-	기뻐하-	appear, act happy

Note, however, that the expression -아/-어/...해하- is not used when we ask about the feelings and emotions of the second person, ie *you*. Thus,

기뻐요?	Are you happy?
태우씨가 부러워요?	Do you envy Tae-U?

### Language Notes: the Verb 그립-

As is the case with the verb 부럽- (Lit. *be envied*) in the above, the verb 그립- (Lit. *be missed*) is a description verb that is inherently 'passive' in meaning; Korean lacks the counterpart of the verb *to miss*, which is semantically an 'active' verb. To express that you miss a person, a place or a time, you simply say that a person, a place or a time is 'missed' in Korean, ie, the person, the place or the time is marked with the particle -이/-가, not -을/-를.

#### EXAMPLES

선영씨가 그리워요.	I miss Seon-Yeong. (lit. <i>Seon-Yeong is missed (by me).</i> )
한국이 그리워요.	I miss Korea.
대학교 때가 그리워요.	I miss my university days.
초등학교 때 친구들이 그리워요.	I miss my friends in my primary school days.

### 3 SHOWING SYMPATHY/EMPATHY

Here's a simple but effective way of showing sympathy for someone. The expression corresponds to "You must be ..." in English

**... VST - (으)시 - 겠어요.**

**NOTES:** VST = verb stem, (으)시 = honorific; when the verb stem ends in a consonant use 으시, 겠 = presumptive suffix, 어요 = polite, informal verb ending.

#### EXAMPLES

슬프시겠어요.	You must be sad (about that).
기분이 좋으시겠어요.	You must be happy (Lit. <i>feeling good</i> ).
기쁘시겠어요.	You must be happy (about that).
피곤하시겠어요.	You must be tired.
불편하시겠어요.	That must be inconvenient (for you).
외로우시겠어요.	You must feel lonely.

### 4 You must have been ...

And when we are commenting on the 'then' feelings of the the person we're speaking to, we can say

**... DVST - (으)셨 - 겠어요.**

**NOTES:** (으)셨 = (으)시 + 었 = honorific + PAST; when the verb stem ends in a consonant use 으셨, 겠 = presumption, -어요 = polite, informal verb-ending.

#### EXAMPLES

지난 주에 한국에 갔다왔어요.	I went to Korea last week.
그래요? 재미 있었겠어요.	Really? That must have been interesting.

### 5 Describing People, Situations

머리	head	게으르-	be lazy, indolent
머리가 좋-	be clever	게으름뱅이	a lazy-bones
머리가 나쁘-	be stupid	복잡하-	be complicated
마음	mind, spirit	목이 마르-	be thirsty
마음이 좋은 사람	a good-hearted person	배가 고프-	be hungry
기쁜 마음으로	in a happy frame of mind	부자	rich person
마음에 들-	be pleasing, be to one's liking	부자예요	'He/She's rich.'
친절하-	be kind, polite	부자가 되-	get rich
열심히 하-	do something wholeheartedly	가난하-	be poor
열심히	earnestly	운이 좋-	be lucky, have good luck
부지런하-	be hard-working	힘이 없-	be listless

## 6 Why?

To express this, we can say

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{왜 ...?} \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{왜 그래요?} \\ \text{왜요?} \end{array} \right\} \end{array} \right\}$

**NOTES:** 왜 ...? = why ...?, 왜 그래요? = why is that so?, 왜요? = why?

## 7 Since/Because ...

When we want to explain the causal relationship between two sets of information we can say

...  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{VST1 - 아/어} \\ \dots\text{해} \end{array} \right\}$  - 서, VST2 ...

### EXAMPLES

아파서 병원에 갔어요.	I was sick so I went to the hospital.
약속이 있어서 시내로 가요.	I'm going downtown – I've got an appointment.
너무 비싸서 안 샀어요.	I didn't buy it – it was too expensive.
주소를 몰라서 못 갔어요.	I couldn't go because I didn't know the address.

Three points to note:

(1) *The tense marker comes after the VST2 – there is no tense marker after VST1:*

너무 비싸서 안 샀어요.	(correct)
너무 비쌌서 안 샀어요.	(incorrect)

(2) *We often shorten the second clause (i.e. the VST2 clause) by substituting it with the phrase ... 그래요, or simply attaching 요 to ...서. So*

너무 비싸서 안 샀어요.	= 너무 비싸서 그랬어요.
	= 너무 비싸서요.
주소를 몰라서 못 갔어요.	= 주소를 몰라서 그랬어요.
	= 주소를 몰라서요.

(3) *It's a good idea to bear in mind the full range of meaning for this grammatical structure. Look at these sentences.*

시장에 가서 포도를 샀어요.	I went to the market and bought some grapes.
앉아서 기다리세요.	Won't you have a seat and wait?

Sentences like these show that  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{VST - 아/어} \\ \dots\text{해} \end{array} \right\}$  itself doesn't indicate 'because' etc – it simply indicates that the following action took place in the circumstance indicated by VST1. Thus 너무 비싸서 안 샀어요. actually means "It was too expensive, and that being the case, I didn't buy it."

## 8 Some Nouns and Verbs

열-	open	놓고오-	forget to bring, leave behind
닫-	close	놓고가-	forget to take, leave behind
서-	stand, come to a halt	칠판	blackboard
나-	happen, break out	배	stomach
나가-	go out	고프-	hungry; lit, <i>empty</i>
나오-	come out	목	throat
놓-	put, place something somewhere	마르-	thirsty; lit, <i>dry</i>

## EXAMPLES

102 페이지를 열었어요.	I opened the book to Page 102.
문을 닫으세요.	Close the door, please.
기차가 역에서 섰어요.	The train came to a halt at the station.
큰일 났어요.	Something (bad) has happened!
선영씨는 우산을 놓고갔어요.	Seon-Yeong has left her umbrella (here).
배가 고파요.	I'm hungry
목이 말라요.	I'm thirsty.

## 9 In the process of ...

When we want to stress that an action is in the process of being carried out we can say

... AVST - 고 있어요.

## EXAMPLES

카일리는 지금 편지를 쓰고 있어요.	Kylie's writing a letter now.
고양이가 문 뒤에서 잠을 자고 있어요.	The cat is sleeping behind the door.
한자를 요즘 열심히 배우고 있어요.	I'm learning hard Chinese characters these days.
태우는 어제 저녁에 숙제를 하고 있었어요.	Tae-U was doing his homework yesterday evening.

## 10 Compound verbs: VST 아/어/...해 있-

When we want to focus on a state that results from an action we can add -아/어/...해 있- to certain verb-stems.

VST	MEANING	-아/어/...해 있-	MEANING
서-	stand	서있-	be standing
앉-	sit	앉아있-	be seated
오-	come	와있-	be here

Compare these sentences:

애니가 교실로 들어왔어요.	Annie came into the classroom.
애니가 교실로 들어와있어요.	Annie came into the classroom (and he's still there).
태우가 의자에 앉고 있어요.	Tae-U is (in the process of) sitting down in the chair.
태우가 의자에 앉아 있어요.	Tae-U is sitting down in the chair.

## 11 MORE ABOUT -겠-

-겠- is usually described as signifying presumption on the part of the speaker. Because presumption usually (though not always, as we've seen above) emerges in discussions of future activities it often appears as similar to the future tense in English. The following notes are not intended for immediate practical application, but rather are intended for you to refer back to as you observe -겠 arise in various contexts in future Units.

The meaning of -겠 can often be rather elusive to English speakers, and that is why we prefer to introduce it in this Unit in the context of the specific function of expressing sympathy – 피곤하시겠어요 and so on, rather than in more general contexts.

When referring to actions involving oneself – that is, in the first person, -겠 indicates a determination or conviction that what is planned will occur. It is not emotionally neutral like the verb ending -(으)ㄹ 거예요, which we use when making matter-of-fact statements about future actions, but rather suggests an emotional commitment – hence a determination, or commitment to carry out the planned activity. For this reason its flavour can't always be captured in single sentences out of context but, for example,

5시에 다시 오겠어요.	I'll come again at five.
--------------	--------------------------

implies that one is committed enough to the objective of a visit to come back later at a more convenient time, perhaps.

Similarly

제가 하겠어요.	I'll do it.
----------	-------------

communicates a willingness and sense of motivation not to be found with 제가 할 거예요.

When asking other people – that is, in the second person, -겠 carries the same implication, that the person concerned is committed to a planned activity. Thus

내일 가시겠어요?	Are you going tomorrow?
-----------	-------------------------

carries an overtone of “Are you set on going tomorrow?”

Finally, when used with third parties, -겠 changes meaning, because logically we cannot impute conviction or determination to other people; they are, after all, inner states that only the person concerned can know the reality of. Therefore, when referring to third parties -겠 conveys the presumption of the speaker. Thus

김선생님이 내일 가시겠어요.	Mr Kim will go tomorrow.
-----------------	--------------------------

conveys an overtone not of “Mr Kim's set on going tomorrow.”, but of “I guess Mr Kim's going tomorrow.”

## 20 한국에서 살기가 어때요?

### WHAT'S IT LIKE LIVING IN KOREA?

In this Unit we learn to say what the weather's like, what it's like to study Korean, on so on. We also look at how to form an adverb out of a verb, how to use pronouns, and what to say if we want the person we're speaking to to agree with what we're saying.

#### 1 Weather & Climate

날씨	weather	기후	climate
봄	spring	여름	summer
가을	autumn	겨울	winter
비	rain	비가 오-	<i>It rains.</i>
눈	snow	흐리-	cloudy
계절	season	장마철	rainy season
바람	wind	바람이 불-	windy

#### 2 General

영화	movie, cinema	경치	scenery
몸	body	몸에 좋-	good for the body
머리	head	머리가 좋-	bright, clever
할 일	things to do	아주	very
너무	too (much)	물론	of course
별로 (+ neg)	not especially	그리고	... And then ...
그렇지만	... But ...	싫어하-	dislike
친절하-	kind	부지런하-	diligent
같-	same	다르-	different
빠르-	fast, quick		

#### 3 Learning Korean involves ...

말하기	speaking	듣기	listening
읽기	reading	쓰기	writing
받아쓰기	dictation	발음	pronunciation

## Eating, studying, working etc

In fact the suffix -기, attached to the verb stem, is a productive device; it makes an ‘-ing’ noun from a verb.

Some examples:

가-	가기	going	살-	살기	living
보-	보기	looking	공부하-	공부하기	studying
먹-	먹기	eating	마시-	마시기	drinking

## It's easy to ...

When we want to say that we find certain activities easy we can say

... VST-기(가) 쉬워요.

**NOTES:** The use of the subject particle is optional.

### EXAMPLES

한국말은 배우기가 쉬워요.	It's easy to learn Korean.
더운 날에는 일하기가 힘들어요.	It's hard to work on hot days.
버스로 가기는 불편해요.	It's inconvenient to go by bus.
한국말은 혼자서 공부하기 어려운 것 같아요. It seems studying Korean by myself is hard.	

## I like/dislike doing ...

When we want to describe things we like, or dislike, doing we can say

VST-기(를) 좋아해요/싫어해요.

**NOTES:** The use of the object particle is optional.

### EXAMPLES

주말에 친구하고 노래방에 가기를 좋아해요.	I like going to Noraebang (karaoke) with my friends on weekends.
태우는 책 읽기를 좋아해요.	Tae-U likes reading books.
아침에 일찍 일어나기를 싫어해요.	I dislike waking up early in the morning.
외국어로 말하기는 좋아하지만 쓰기는 싫어해요.	I like speaking in a foreign language but I don't like writing in it.

## We would like you to do ...

Another context in which you'll hear the VST-기 regularly is in the construction ... 하시기 바랍니다. Public announcements – in airplanes, airport terminals and other public places, for example, usually request people to follow instructions in this way. 바라- means *desire, want*.

## 4 Adverbs

There are various ways to describe HOW an action was/is performed. Note that Korean use of adverbs of manner extends not only to the way in which an action is performed but to its outcome as well.

- We can add -게 to DVST ending in 있-:

재미있-	be interesting	재미있게	interestingly
맛있-	delicious	맛있게	deliciously

- We can add -게 to DVST ending in ㅂ or ㅁ:

나쁘-	bad	나쁘게	badly
쉽-	easy	쉽게	easily
예쁘-	pretty	예쁘게	prettily
반갑-	glad	반갑게	gladly
맵-	(chili) hot	맵게	with a lot of chili ('hotly')

- With DVST that end in 하-, we replace the 하- with 히-:

친절하-	kind	친절히	kindly
부지런하-	diligent	부지런히	diligently

- With DVST that end in ㄹ or ㄴ, we replace the ㄹ/ㄴ with -ㄹ리:

빠르-	fast, quick	빨리	quickly
멀-	(is) far	멀리	far away

- There are also rules that cover other DVST, but examples of their use are so few that it's usually better to simply commit the adverb form to memory.

늦-	late	늦게	late
많-	many	많이	a lot/copiously
같-	be same	같이	together

Some examples:

맛 있게 드세요!	Enjoy your food!/Bon appetit.
여름방학을 재미있게 지냈어요.	I had a good time in the summer holidays.
학생들이 교수를 나쁘게 말했어요.	The students spoke poorly of the professor.
우리는 시장에서 옷을 싸게 샀어요.	We bought our clothes cheaply in the market.
어머니는 김치를 맵게 만들었어요.	Mother made the Gimchi hot to the taste.
선영씨는 한복을 언제나 예쁘게 입어요.	Seon-Yeong always wears Hanbok beautifully.
늦게 와서 미안합니다.	I'm sorry I came late.
시간 없어요. 빨리 갑시다.	We haven't got much time. Quick let's go.
많이 드세요.	Bon appetit! (Lit. 'Take a lot'.)

## 5 Personal pronouns

As you have noticed already, we usually don't put personal pronouns in a Korean sentence if the context is clear, ie, if you, the speaker, think that the hearer knows who you are talking about. If you are going to use personal pronouns, then you'll need to take note of the fact that, broadly speaking, Korean makes three kinds of distinctions in deciding which pronoun is appropriate.



Personal Pronouns			
	SINGULAR		
	HUMBLE	NEUTRAL	EXALTED
I	저/제	나/내 (I)	
II		너/네 (you)	title/kinship term, eg, 선생님
III		이/그/저사람 (he/she), 이/그/저것(or 거) (it)	이/그/저분
	PLURAL		
	HUMBLE	NEUTRAL	EXALTED
I	저희(들)	우리(들) (we)	title/kinship term plus 들
II		너희(들) (you, pl)	여러분
III		이/그/저사람들 (they), 이/그/저것들 (they, non-human)	이/그/저분들

### Distinction A: whether the speaker is being self-deprecating and thus humble

In referring to ourselves 저 is used, 제 before the subject particle 가. Note also that 제 is the possessive form, ie, *my*, of 저.

저는 선영이에요.	I'm Seon-Yeong.
제 이름은 이선영이에요.	My name is I Seon-Yeong.
제가 했어요.	I did it.
저를 만나고 싶어했어요.	He wanted to see me.

We can't refer to others in self-deprecating mode of course; they must be referred to in terms of neutrality or honour.

### Distinction B: whether the speaker is striking a neutral tone

In referring to ourselves and others neutrally, that is, showing neither respect nor disrespect, we use the following pronouns.

#### First person

We use 나, and 내 before the subject particle 가 or when used as the possessive pronoun, ie, *my*.

나는 선영이에요.	I'm Seon-Yeong.
내 이름은 이선영이에요.	My name is I Seon-Yeong.
내가 했어요.	I did it.
나를 만나고 싶어했어요.	He wanted to see me.

#### Second person singular

We use 너, 네 before the subject particle 가 or when used as the possessive pronoun, ie, *your*.

너는 밥 먹었니?	Have you eaten?
네가 학교에 가니?	Are you going to school?

#### Second person plural: 너희(들)

너희들은 밥 먹었니?	Have you eaten?
-------------	-----------------

Note that the ending -니 is a question form used in the intimate speech style, called *panmal* (반말). *Panmal*, which we meet later on in this course, is used when the speakers have a well established, close personal relationship. We mention this here because 너, 네 or 너희 would always be used with *panmal*.

Third person

We use *이사람*, *그사람* and *저사람* for humans, and *이것*, *그것* and *저것* for inanimate objects. *이것*, *그것* and *저것* are often shortened in everyday speech to *이거*, *그거* and *저거* – we met *이거* already in Unit 6. Note also that when *이거*, *그거* and *저거* are used together with the subject particle *-이*, they become further shortened: *이게*, *그게* and *저게*.

그사람은 누구예요?	Who is he/she?
그것은 뭐예요?	What is it?
이거 뭐예요?	What's this?
이게 더 좋아요.	This is better.

**Distinction C: whether the speaker is showing honour to the person being referred to**Second person singular

Korean lacks a pronoun for *you*, *respected person*. We use a status referent, appropriate to the person we are talking about, such as *선생님*, *-씨* etc. In most cases, this is the same expression that we would use when addressing the person (to catch his/her attention). Regarding the usage of *-씨*, we normally use the person's full name with *-씨* (eg, *이선영씨*), but we can use the person's given name with *-씨* if we feel that the person is close and familiar (eg, *선영씨*). It would be taken as rude to just say *이씨*.

김선생님은 언제 오셨어요?	When did you (Mr Kim) come?
이선영씨는 언제 오셨어요?	When did you (Miss I Seon-Yeong) come?
선영씨는 언제 오셨어요?	When did you (Seon-Yeong) come?

Second person plural: 여러분

여러분은 지금 뭐 공부하세요?	What do you (many respected people) study now?
------------------	--

Third person: 이분, 그분, 저분

그분은 누구예요?	Who's that (respected person)?
-----------	--------------------------------

**6 ... isn't it?/don't you think? etc**

In conversation, *VST-지요*, pronounced with a rising intonation, invites the person being spoken to agree with a comment on a third party. It softens the direct effect of a plain statement, and is similar to the English tag questions ‘... isn't it?’, ‘... won't you?’ etc.

**VST-지요?** ↗

**EXAMPLES**

한국말이 어렵지요? ↗	Korean is difficult, don't you think? ↗
한국이 좋지요? ↗	Korea's nice, don't you think? ↗
그 영화 봤지요? ↗	You've seen the movie, haven't you? ↗
한국음식이 맵지요? ↗	Korean food's hot, don't you think? ↗

But when *VST-지요* is pronounced with falling intonation it doesn't invite agreement, but expresses confidence that the person being addressed sees things the same way. People usually don't disagree

when others make observations such as

#### EXAMPLES

춥지요?	Cold, isn't it?
재미 없지요?	Boring, isn't it?
요즘 바쁘시지요?	You're busy these days, aren't you?
식사했지요?	You've eaten, haven't you?
이야기 들었지요?	You heard the story, didn't you?
걸어서 갔지요?	You went on foot, didn't you?

Again, this reflects the practice in English, where a falling intonation on tag questions presumes agreement.

## 7 Making exclamations

In listening to people speaking Korean you may often hear them adding extra emphasis to what they're saying by using the verb ending -네(요). Look at the following examples.

태우가 왔네요!	Well, well – so Tae-U's come!
태우가 오네요!	Well, well – here comes Tae-U!
태우가 오겠네요!	Well, well - Tae-U will be coming!
오늘 날씨는 덥네요!	It's really hot today!

You will also hear from time to time -군(요) in place of -네요. This ending is generally seen as forceful and masculine in tone.

태우가 왔군요!	Well, well – so Tae-U's come!
태우가 오는군요!	Well, well – here comes Tae-U!
태우가 오겠군요!	Well, well - Tae-U will be coming!
오늘 날씨는 덥군요!	It's really hot today!

The extent to which you use these verb endings will depend on the extent to which you feel comfortable in using them. For our purpose, we're introducing them here to help your listening skills, rather than suggesting that you use them actively yourself.

## 8 Some Useful Expressions

왜냐하면, ...	The reason is that ...
사실은 ...	In fact, ...
예를 들어서 ...	For example, ...
그게 아니라 ...	That's not it./That's not the point.
네, 맞아요.	Yes, that's right.
네, 그런 모양이에요.	Yes, it seems to be that way.
반드시 그럴지는 않아요.	Not necessarily so.
여러가지 이유로 ...	For various reasons ...
어느것 말이에요?	Which one do you mean?
특히	especially
혹시 ...	By any chance ...
뭐니뭐니 해도 ...	Whatever one says [about it] ...

## 9 Cultural Notes: Korea's Climate

In this Unit we learn some ways of talking about weather and climate, so if you're not very familiar with Korea's climate the following notes may be of interest.

There is relatively little internal variation in Korea's climate, and so while our description applies specifically to Seoul, it applies to all the significant population centres on the Peninsula as well.

Korea has a temperate climate, marked by hot, humid summers and long, cold winters. It is also a continental climate, with the majority of its weather patterns the result of slow, stable development over continental North Asia. The day-to-day variation in weather patterns that most Australians, especially those who live on the east coast, are subject to is by and large absent from Korea's weather.

Running through the calendar year, the New Year finds Korea in the depth of winter. By and large the winter climate is clear and sunny with occasional snow, but although much of Korea is on the same latitude as the Mediterranean Sea, the winters are, by Australian standards, quite cold. This is mainly due to the continental climate pattern which brings in masses of cold air from west and north of the peninsula. Average temperature ranges for January would be about minus five to one or two degrees, and when the wind is from the north the chill factor can take the temperature down to minus twenty and further.

There is little real change in this pattern until March, when things begin to warm up, although cold snaps can still occur in late March. These snaps can often kill spring buds, and so are called 'the cold that envies the flowers' - 꽃샘추위. In April the weather warms up rapidly, and by May the daily temperature range is about fifteen to twenty-five degrees.

By late May the daily temperature is quite high, and for the next two months conditions remain hot and humid - low thirties in the day, mid twenties at night, with little in the way of relief, day or night. This is part of the build-up to the annual rainy season that usually lasts for three weeks or so, spread over June and July. After another burst of heat, temperatures begin to fall in mid September and the humidity subsides.

The height of autumn lasts from mid September to the beginning of November, and is generally regarded as the finest time of the year, with cool, fine, crisp days and mild nights. Winter weather then begins to appear in November, and snow showers can occur from mid November onwards. By December winter has set in and sub-zero temperatures are regular.

# **EXERCISES**

# 1 인사

## 1 Practising Korean vowel sounds

In the list below all the twenty-one Korean vowels are given with approximate Australian English equivalents. As we will learn in the next unit, each of the twenty-one Korean vowels – not just ‘single’ vowels (ie a, e, o, u and i) but also ‘complex’ vowels (eg ae, ya, wa, etc) – is represented as a different vowel symbol in Hangeul. Let’s practise the sounds.

a	as in <i>part</i>
ae	as in <i>cable</i>
ya	as in <i>yard</i>
yae	as in <i>yabby</i>
eo	as in <i>pot</i>
e	as in <i>pet</i>
yeo	as in <i>yonder</i>
ye	as in <i>yet</i>
o	as in <i>port</i>
wa	as in <i>wonder</i>
wae	as in <i>wag</i>
oe	as in <i>wet</i>
yo	as in <i>your</i>
u	as in <i>do</i>
wo	as in <i>wobble</i>
we	as in <i>wet</i>
wi	as in <i>weeds</i>
yu	as in <i>few</i>
eu	as in <i>urn</i>
ui	Say <i>Ernie</i> without the <i>n</i> (and without moving the lips)
i	as in <i>feet</i>

## 2 Practising Korean consonant sounds

What are the consonants that you have in your language but not in Korean?

- As mentioned in the main text, *b*, *d*, *g* and *j* are pronounced the same as in English, except when they occur sentence-initially. In this case they are pronounced as *p*, *t*, *k* and *ch*, respectively. Now practise reading the following expressions.

g  
 kk as in *sky*  
 n  
 d  
 tt as in *stop*  
 r/l  
 m  
 b  
 pp as in *spot*  
 s  
 ss  
 ng as in *sing*  
 j  
 jj  
 ch  
 k  
 t  
 p  
 h

ban-chan	a-beo-ji	don	pa-do
side dishes	father	money	waves
gom	a-gi	Jo-a-yo	a-ju
bear	baby	That's good!	very much

- Korean *r* is a 'flap' *r*. Although replacing *r* with English *r* does not bring about a meaning change, you should know *r* is produced by a single, quick flap of the tongue against the alveolar ridge – the inward projection of the gums between the upper teeth and the hard palate. Ask your instructor for a demonstration. Now practise.

sa-rang	gu-reum	da-ri	Geu-rae-yo
love	clouds	bridge	That's right!

- Korean *l* is a 'retroflex' *l*. You produce a retroflex *l* sound in the same manner as you do an *l*, except that your tongue tip should be placed on the hard palate, not at the back of the upper teeth. Now practise.

sal-lim	Mol-la-yo	Dal-la-yo	gil
house keeping	I don't know.	It's different.	road

- A doubled consonant, ie *pp*, *tt*, *ss*, *jj* or *kk*, indicates tensed pronunciation. In English tensed consonants do not constitute separate sound categories for distinguishing between words, but tensed consonants do exist. For example, the *p*, *t* and *k* sounds in *s* clusters are tensed consonants – such as *spot*, *stop* and *sky*. Now practise.

bul	ppul	pul
fire	horn	grass
dal	ttal	tal
the moon	daughter	mask
geun	kkeun	keun
root	string	large
Ja-yo	Jja-yo	Cha-yo
I'm sleeping.	It's salty!	It's cold!
sal	ssal	
flesh	rice	

- By convention, *s* and *ss* shall be pronounced respectively as *sh* and 'tensed' *sh* (ie *sh* with a stronger hiss) if they are followed by *i* or *y*. When you read *si*, for instance, you should not read it in the same way of naming the English letter *c* but as *she*.

si-heom	si	Sim-sim-hae-yo	Me-i-seun-ssi
exam	peom	I'm bored!	Mr Mason

### 3 Understanding basic Insa

Match each of the Korean Insa expressions on the left with its English equivalent on the right.

An-nyeong-ha-se-yo?	•	• Come in.
An-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo.	•	• Good-bye (to someone staying behind).
An-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo.	•	• Good-bye (to someone leaving).
An-jeu-se-yo.	•	• Hello. How are you?
Ban-gap-sseum-ni-da.	•	• See you again.
Deu-reo-o-se-yo.	•	• I'm sorry.
Eo-seo o-se-yo.	•	• It's O.K.
Gam-sa-ham-ni-da.	•	• Pleased to meet you.
Gwaen-cha-na-yo.	•	• Take a seat.
Mi-an-ham-ni-da.	•	• Sorry I'm late.
Ne.	•	• Thank you.
Neu-jeo-seo mi-an-ham-ni-da.	•	• Thank you.
Tto man-na-yo.	•	• Welcome.
Go-map-sseum-ni-da.	•	• Yes.



#### 4 Reading basic Insa aloud

Read aloud each of the Korean Insa expressions.

- An-nyeong-ha-se-yo?
- An-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo.
- An-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo.
- An-jeu-se-yo.
- Ban-gap-sseum-ni-da.
- Deu-reo-o-se-yo.
- Eo-seo o-se-yo.
- Gam-sa-ham-ni-da.
- Go-map-sseum-ni-da.
- Gwaen-cha-na-yo.
- Jon Me-i-seun-i-e-yo.
- Ka-il-li Wo-keo-ye-yo.
- Mi-an-ham-ni-da.
- Ne.
- Neu-jeo-seo mi-an-ham-ni-da.
- Tto man-na-yo.

## 5 Exchanging Insa

This exercise is to help you respond appropriately to Insa. Firstly, cover Column 2. Then read the first item in Column 1 and try to think of an appropriate response. When you have your response, uncover the first item in Column two and check your response. Now, repeat for the rest of Column 1.

	Column 1	Column 2
1.	An-nyeong-ha-se-yo? Ka-il-li wo-keo-ye-yo.	Ne, an-nyeong-ha-se-yo? YOUR NAME-ye-yo or -i-e-yo.
2.	Ban-gap-sseum-ni-da.	Ne, ban-gap-sseum-ni-da.
3.	Neu-jeo-seo mi-an-ham-ni-da.	Gwaen-cha-na-yo.
4.	Gam-sa-ham-ni-da.	Ne, gam-sa-ham-ni-da. or Gwaen-cha-na-yo.
5.	An-nyeong-ha-se-yo?	Ne, an-nyeong-ha-se-yo?
6.	Go-map-sseum-ni-da.	Ne, go-map-sseum-ni-da. or Gwaen-cha-na-yo.
7.	Deu-reo-o-se-yo.	Ne, gam-sa-ham-ni-da. or Ne, go-map-sseum-ni-da.
8.	An-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo.	Ne, an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo. or Ne, an-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo.
9.	An-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo.	Ne, an-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo.
10.	Eo-seo o-se-yo.	An-nyeong-ha-se-yo?
11.	Tto man-na-yo.	Ne, tto man-na-yo.
12.	Mi-an-ham-ni-da.	Gwaen-cha-na-yo.
13.	An-jeu-se-yo.	Ne, gam-sa-ham-ni-da. or Ne, go-map-sseum-ni-da.

## 6 Practise: What do you say?

Following is a series of social situations. Discuss with your instructor what would be an appropriate response. Note that in some cases no substantial response may be required.

1. A waitress brings your order.
2. The taxi-driver gives you your change.
3. The taxi-driver reminds you that you've left your umbrella in the cab.
4. The class starts at 11.00 a.m, you come at 11.20 a.m.
5. There is a knock, you open the front door and it is your friend.
6. You made a phone call on behalf of a friend who cannot speak English and are now responding to his thanks.
7. You finish a brief conversation with a friend whom you've met by chance on the street.
8. You greet your teacher.
9. The waiter brings your drink, it is not what you remember ordering, the waiter offers to change it, but you decide to keep it.
10. Your Korean class ends. Your teacher says "Thank you", you say to your teacher ...
11. The cashier gives you your change and thanks you for your custom.
12. A Korean friend makes a phone-call on your behalf to resolve a problem.

## 7 Hangeul preview: Consonants and vowels

Here are the lists of Korean consonants and vowels again, but this time with Hangeul letters as well. We invite you to have a close look at them, and discuss with your fellow students how tensed consonants and ‘complex’ vowels are represented in Hangeul in particular.

Consonants		Vowels	
g	ㄱ	a	ㅏ as in <i>part</i>
kk	ㄲ as in <i>sky</i>	ae	ㅑ as in <i>cab<u>le</u></i>
n	ㄴ	ya	ㅓ as in <i>ya<u>rd</u></i>
d	ㄷ	yae	ㅕ as in <i>ya<u>bb</u>y</i>
tt	ㄸ as in <i>st<u>op</u></i>	eo	ㅗ as in <i>po<u>t</u></i>
r/l	ㄹ	e	ㅜ as in <i>pe<u>t</u></i>
m	ㅁ	yeo	ㅠ as in <i>yo<u>nde</u>r</i>
b	ㅂ	ye	ㅟ as in <i>ye<u>t</u></i>
pp	ㅃ as in <i>sp<u>ot</u></i>	o	ㅡ as in <i>po<u>rt</u></i>
s	ㅅ	wa	ㅛ as in <i>wo<u>nde</u>r</i>
ss	ㅆ	wae	ㅜ as in <i>wa<u>g</u></i>
ng	ㅇ as in <i>si<u>ng</u></i>	oe	ㅝ as in <i>w<u>e</u>t</i>
j	ㅈ	yo	ㅠ as in <i>yo<u>ur</u></i>
jj	ㅉ	u	ㅓ as in <i>do<u>u</u></i>
ch	ㅊ	wo	ㅜ as in <i>wo<u>bb</u>le</i>
k	ㅋ	we	ㅟ as in <i>w<u>e</u>t</i>
t	ㅌ	wi	ㅛ as in <i>w<u>ee</u>ds</i>
p	ㅍ	yu	ㅠ as in <i>fe<u>w</u></i>
h	ㅎ	eu	ㅡ as in <i>u<u>rn</u></i>
		ui	ㅟ Say <i>Ernie</i> without the <i>n</i> (and without moving the lips)
		i	ㅣ as in <i>fe<u>e</u>t</i>

## 8 Hangeul preview: Basic Insa

Below are basic Insa expressions again, written in Hangeul as well. Using the lists of Hangeul letters above, ascertain as much as possible how Hangeul letters are used. Do this exercise with your fellow students. In particular, do you see where spaces are? Do you see how ‘strangely’ the letter ㅇ is used? Are there any discrepancies between what is romanised and what is written in Hangeul?

- An-nyeong-ha-se-yo?
- 안녕하세요?

- Go-map-sseum-ni-da.
- 고맙습니다.

- An-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo.
- 안녕히 가세요.

- Gwaen-cha-na-yo.
- 괜찮아요.

- An-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo.
- 안녕히 계세요.

- Jon Me-i-seun-i-e-yo.
- 존 메이슨이에요.

- An-jeu-se-yo.
- 앉으세요.

- Ka-il-li Wo-keo-ye-yo.
- 카일리 워커예요.

- Ban-gap-sseum-ni-da.
- 반갑습니다.

- Mi-an-ham-ni-da.
- 미안합니다.

- Deu-reo-o-se-yo.
- 들어오세요.

- Ne.
- 네.

- Eo-seo o-se-yo.
- 어서 오세요.

- Neu-jeo-seo mi-an-ham-ni-da.
- 늦어서 미안합니다.

- Gam-sa-ham-ni-da.
- 감사합니다.

- Tto man-na-yo.
- 또 만나요.

## 2 한글 (1)

### 1 Writing Hangeul letters

Write all the Hangeul consonants and vowels in the table below.

Consonants					
	g	kk	n	d	tt
	r/l	m	b	pp	s
	ss	[ ]/ng	j	jj	ch
	k	t	p	h	
Vowels					
	a	ae	ya	yae	eo
	e	yeo	ye	o	wa
	wae	oe	yo	u	wo
	we	wi	yu	eu	ui
	i				

## 2 Vowel letters

Re-group the following vowel letters, according to their shapes: vertical, horizontal or mixed. Give their pronunciations (ie romanisations) as well.

ㅏ	ㅑ	ㅓ
ㅗ	ㅛ	ㅕ
ㅛ	ㅜ	ㅠ
ㅓ	ㅗ	ㅜ
ㅗ	ㅛ	ㅕ
ㅛ	ㅜ	ㅠ
ㅓ	ㅗ	ㅜ
ㅗ	ㅛ	ㅕ

Vertical Vowel Letters

Horizontal Vowel Letters

Mixed Vowel Letters

### 3 Consonant letters

Give the pronunciation (ie romanisation) of each of the following consonant letters.

ㄱ

ㅋ

ㆁ

ㆅ

ㄴ

ㄷ

ㄹ

ㄷ

ㄷ

ㄴ

ㄷ

ㄹ

ㄷ

ㄷ

ㄱ

ㅋ

ㄱ

ㅇ

ㅇ



#### 4 Reading Hangeul syllables (1)

The following list of words are commonly used English words in Korean. They should not be regarded as foreign words, but rather as Korean words of foreign origin. Your task is identify, or guess, what they are.

게임

메모

바나나

세미나

레몬

토마토

타이어

피아노

버스

비디오

카세트

테니스

커피

토스트

키위

스피커

쥬스

라디오

카메라

인터뷰

나이프

## 5 Reading Hangeul syllables (2)

Here are more Korean words of foreign origin. Your task is identify, or guess, what they are.

아이스크림

재즈

스캐너

치즈

포크

프린터

스킨 로션

오렌지

마우스

버터

바이어

캐디

캠퍼스

카누

카드

누드

오븐

퀴즈

챔피언

상송

콘크리트

**6 Reading Hangeul syllables (3)**

Here are more Korean words of foreign origin. Your task is identify, or guess, what they are.

파티

엔진

패션

가스

위스키

가이드

비키니

히피

인턴

아이러니

노하우

마라톤

미터

펭귄

포스터

프로그램

리듬

사우나

사이즈

스포츠 카

팀

## 7 Reading Hangeul syllables (4)

Below are some English first names in Hangeul. Tell us what they are.

존

피터

앤

진

제임스

수잔

로버트

크리스틴

자신타

팜

토니

로빈

조오지

로버트

제니

데이비드

리처드

에드워드

피오나

조앤

고든

## 8 Reading Hangeul syllables (5)

Below are some Korean surnames. Read them aloud, and see if you know any Koreans with these surnames.

강	고	곽	구	권
김	남	노	류	문
민	박	방	배	백
변	서	성	손	송
신	심	안	양	오
우	유	윤	이	인
임	장	전	정	조
주	진	차	채	천
최	한	허	홍	황

### 3 한글 (2)

#### 1 Reading more Hangeul syllables (1)

The following list of words are commonly used Korean words of foreign origin. Your task is identify, or guess, what they are.

버거킹

컴퓨터

케이크

갱거루

파마

햄버거

호텔

커피숍

텔레비전

트럭

브래지어

파일

필름

골프

디저트

나이트클럽

로켓

디자인

코알라

서비스

데이트

아파트

밴드

헤어스타일

파인애플

고릴라

기타

## 2 Reading more Hangeul syllables (2)

Here are more Korean words of foreign origin. In the list you'll find some of English names as well. Identify, or guess, what they are.

비자	데이터	택시
맥도날드	엑세서리	앨범
방갈로	카스텔라	달러
가솔린	논스톱	노트북
럭비	섹시	올림픽
폴린	부시	앨리스
알렉스	캐더린	알렌
안나	스미스	헬렌
미셸	폴	빌

### 3 Reading Hangeul

The following list of words contains some examples of countries' names. Your task is identify, or guess, what they are.

그리스

네델란드

뉴질랜드

헝가리

덴마크

라오스

리비아

레바논

멕시코

말레이시아

베트남

벨기에

스웨덴

칠레

인도네시아

케냐

파키스탄

폴란드

프랑스

핀란드

인디아

통가

포르투갈

이집트

러시아

노르웨이

스페인



#### 4 Capital cites ...

Match up the following countries with their capital cities.

- |          |   |          |
|----------|---|----------|
| 1. 노르웨이  | • | • 나이로비   |
| 2. 말레이시아 | • | • 마닐라    |
| 3. 브라질   | • | • 마드리드   |
| 4. 스웨덴   | • | • 바그다드   |
| 5. 스페인   | • | • 방콕     |
| 6. 이라크   | • | • 부다페스트  |
| 7. 이란    | • | • 브라질리아  |
| 8. 인도네시아 | • | • 스톡홀름   |
| 9. 캐나다   | • | • 아바나    |
| 10. 케냐   | • | • 오슬로    |
| 11. 쿠바   | • | • 오타와    |
| 12. 타일랜드 | • | • 자카르타   |
| 13. 핀란드  | • | • 쿠알라룸푸르 |
| 14. 필리핀  | • | • 테헤란    |
| 15. 헝가리  | • | • 헬싱키    |

## 5 Hangeul reading

Look at the following secret messages. Your task is to use the 'Random Hangeul Character Table' below and translate each of the messages into English.

- a4 a2 f6 SPACE a1 d3 b5
- a4 a2 f6 SPACE b1 d3 b5
- d1 a3 c5 f4 b5
- c2 SPACE e2 e1 b5
- c4 b3 SPACE a5 d3 b5
- b2 c4 a5 d3 b5
- b6 SPACE f2 f5 e3 f5 d4 b5
- f5 c3 e4 f5 d4 b5
- d6 a6 d2 SPACE d5 e6 f4 b5
- f1
- c1 c6 f3 b5
- b4 e5 d3 b5

Random Hangeul Character Table

	a	b	c	d	e	f
1	가	계	괘	김	나	네
2	녕	들	또	리	만	메
3	상	서	선	세	슨	아
4	안	앳	어	에	영	예
5	오	요	우	워	으	이
6	일	존	참	카	커	히

## 6 Writing Hangeul syllables

Write the following Insa expressions from Unit 1 in Hangeul. Note that in each box only one syllable is to be written. Also, pay attention to spacing where applicable, and put the relevant punctuation mark at the end as well.

1. An-nyeong-ha-se-yo?

--	--	--	--	--

2. Eo-seo o-se-yo.

--	--

--	--	--

3. An-nyeong-hi ga-se-yo.

--	--	--

--	--	--

4. An-nyeong-hi gye-se-yo.

--	--	--

--	--	--

5. Tto man-na-yo.

--

--	--	--

## 7 More Hangeul reading

Practise reading some Korean words. They are in general items of Korean food and clothing, for which there are no ready English translations.

김치	staple Korean side-dish
불고기	Korean-style barbecue
한복	Korean national dress
가야금	12-string Korean musical instrument
장구	hour-glass-shaped Korean drum
판소리	dramatic song-narrative art form
탈춤	masked dance art form
백일	the ‘hundred days’ – the major celebration of the birth of a child.
환갑	a person’s sixtieth birthday – the major celebration in a person’s life.
막걸리	cloudy rice wine
바둑	Korean board game – ‘go’ in Japanese
소주	distilled Korean liquor
매듭	knot-tying handicraft
추석	the Autumn Moon festival – the most significant festival day in Korea
갓	traditional Korean horsehair hat

**Romanisations:** Gimchi, Bulgogi, Hanbok, Gayageum, Janggu, Pansori, Talchum, Baegil, Hwangap, Makgeolli, Baduk, Soju, Maedeup, Chuseok, and Gat.

## 8 Word squares

All but one of the countries in the box below can be found in the word square below, if you read vertically or horizontally. Which one is it?

Australia	Bangladesh	Brazil	Colombia	France
Grenada	Guinea	Hungary	Liberia	Mali
Mexico	New Zealand	Pakistan	Panama	Poland
Saudi Arabia	Sri Lanka	Sweden	Tonga	Yugoslavia

파 나 마 녕 그 레 나 다 성 개 기

키 어 똥 유 고 슴 라 비 아 게 니

스 룬 스 지 푼 내 리 세 요 방 근

탄 헝 리 서 란 모 베 르 어 근 이

요 가 랑 한 드 막 리 통 가 라 든

번 리 카 문 브 어 아 프 시 데 다

사 우 지 아 라 비 아 랑 멕 시 코

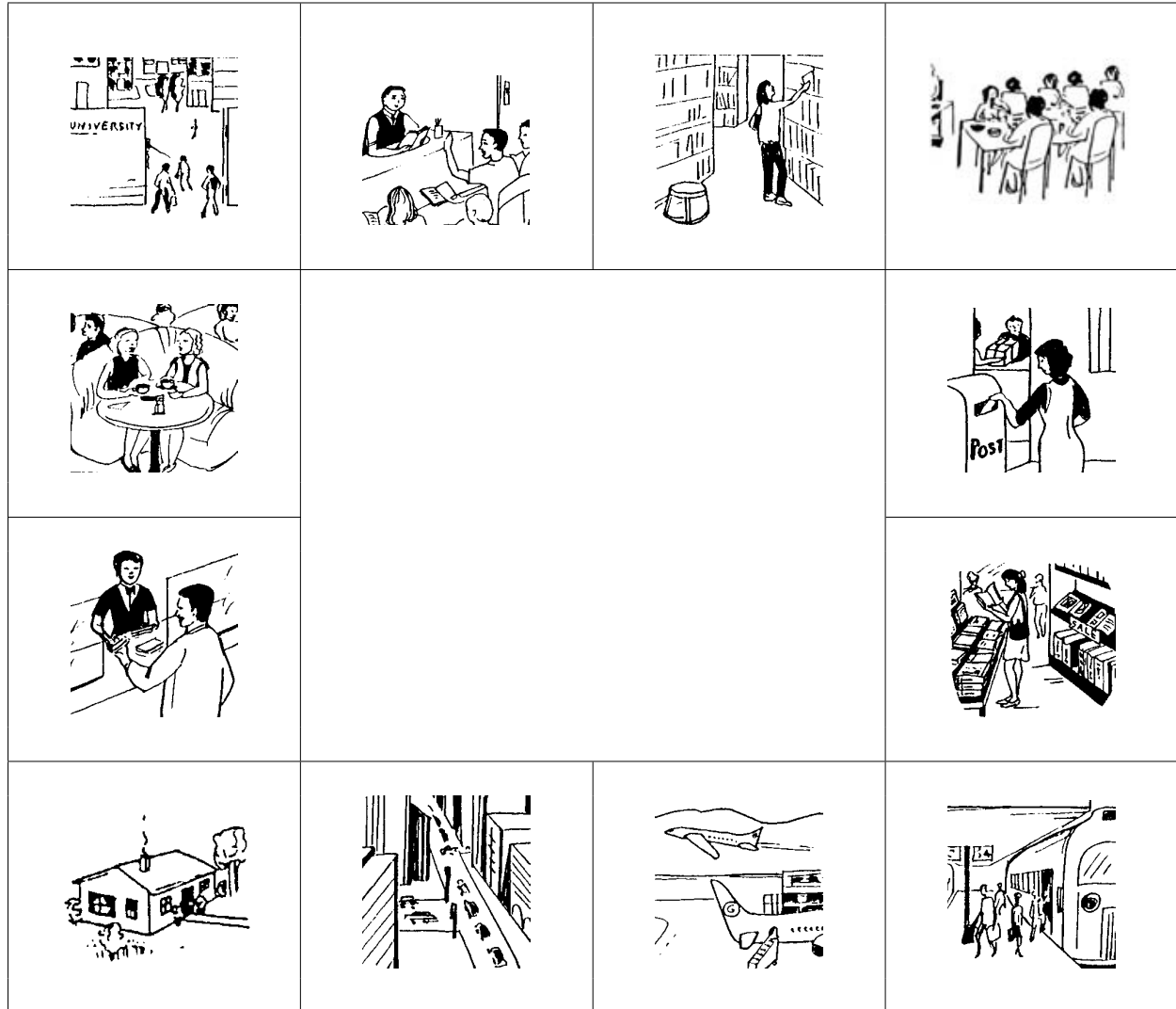
사 랫 이 뉴 직 랜 드 스 웨 덴 홍

히 어 안 쿵 룬 비 아 갠 녕 예 요

## 4 어디 가요?

### 1 Places where we go ... (1)

What do we call each of the following places in Korean? Choose a 'name' from the list in the box below.



강의실

공항

대학교

도서관

서점

시내

역

우체국

은행

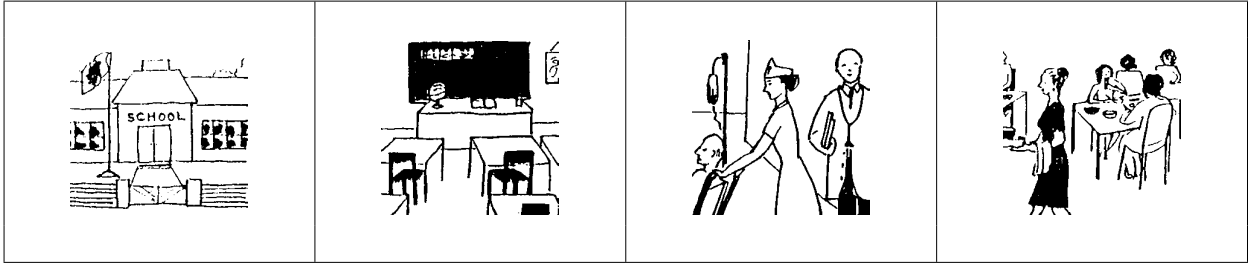
집

커피숍

학생 식당

## 2 Places where we go ... (2)

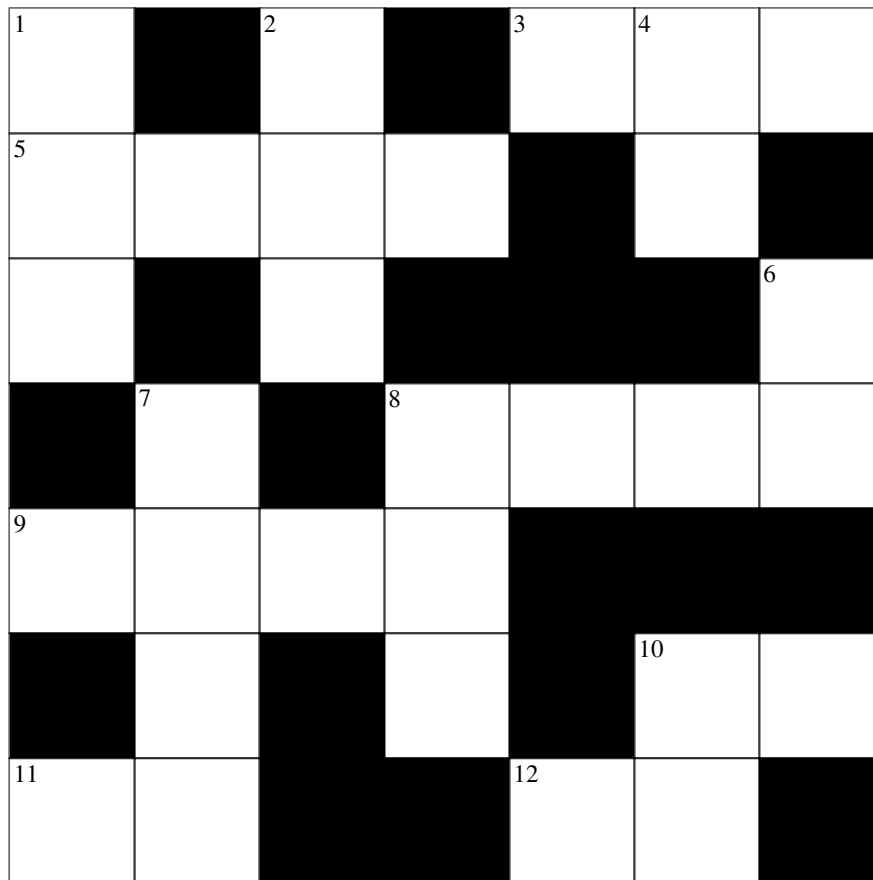
What do we call each of the following places in Korean? Choose a 'name' from the list in the box below.



공원	교실	극장	백화점
버스터미널	병원	비디오가게	
슈퍼마켓	시장	음식점	학교

### 3 Crossword

Try this crossword.



#### ACROSS

- 3. library
- 5. student dining hall
- 8. "He/she takes an exam"
- 9. inside the department store
- 10. airport
- 11. "He/she goes"
- 12. hospital

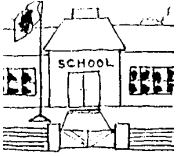
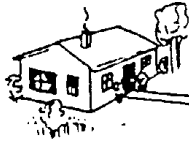
#### DOWN



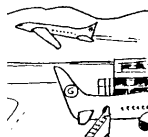









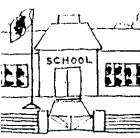







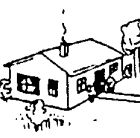



- 1. university
- 2. restaurant
- 4. book shop
- 6. "He/she writes"
- 7. "He/she telephones"
- 8. to city, downtown
- 10. park



#### 4 Pair work: Question & Answer

Do this exercise in pairs, practising asking, and answering to, a question as shown in the example below. If you take the A's role, cover Column B, and ask a question: *Are you going to ...?* using the picture cue provided. If you take the B's role, cover Column A, listen carefully what A asks, and respond: *No. I'm going to ...* using the picture cue provided.

A	EXAMPLE	B
 학교에 가요?		 아니요, 집에 가요.

A	B	A	B
1. 	1. 	7. 	7. 
2. 	2. 	8. 	8. 
3. 	3. 	9. 	9. 
4. 	4. 	10. 	10. 
5. 	5. 	11. 	11. 
6. 	6. 	12. 	12. 

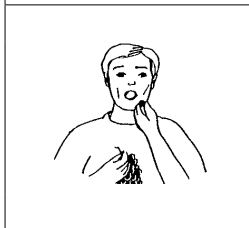
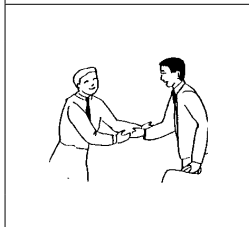
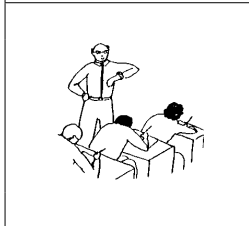
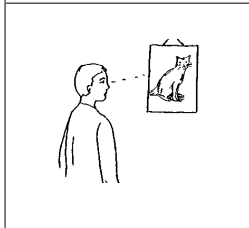
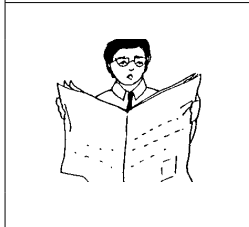
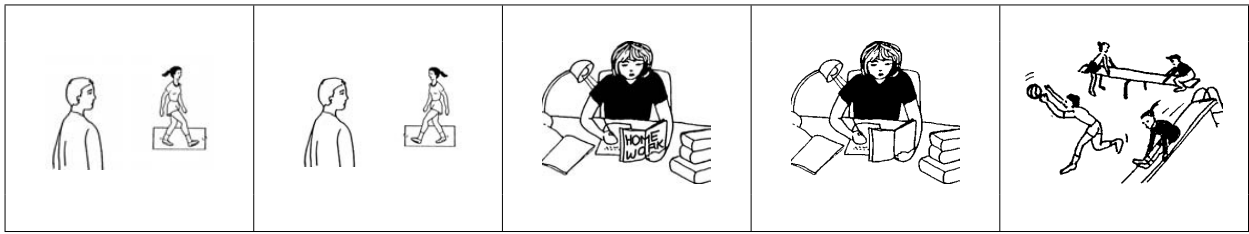
## 5 Making a Statement and Asking a Question in the Polite Informal Style

Attach -아요/-어요, ie the Polite Informal ending, to each of the following verb stems. Explain what rule you have applied to get the answer. Then, practise making a statement or asking a question by changing the intonation pattern.

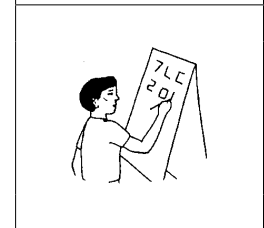
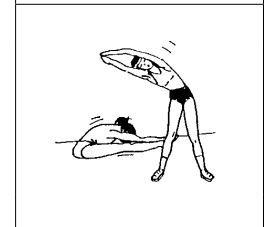
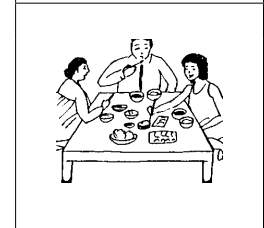
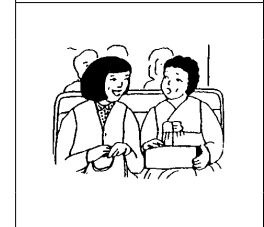
- 가-
- 만나-
- 잠자-
- 보-
- 시험보-
- 오-
- 놀-
- 쓰-
- 마시-
- 먹-
- 읽-
- 하-
- 공부하-
- 숙제하-
- 식사하-
- 운동하-
- 이야기하-
- 전화하-

## 6 What are they doing?

Tell us what the person or persons in each of the picture cues are doing in Korean.



가요.  
공부해요.  
놀아요.  
마셔요.  
만나요.  
먹어요.  
봐요.  
숙제해요.  
시험봐요.  
식사해요.  
써요.  
와요.  
운동해요.  
이야기해요.  
읽어요.  
잠자요.  
전화해요.



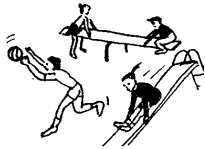
## 7 뭐 해요?

Tell us what the persons below are doing. Number 1 has been done for you.

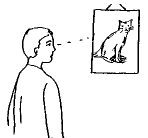



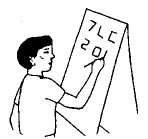

1 	2 	3 	4 
안요.			
5 	6 	7 	8 
9 	10 	11 	12 
13 	14 	15 	16 

## 8 Pair work: Question & Answer

Practise asking, and answering to, a question as shown in the example below. Do this exercise in pairs. If you take the A's role, cover Column B, and ask questions in Column A. If you take the B's role, cover Column A, listen carefully what A asks, and respond using the picture cue provided.

EXAMPLE	
A	B
공부해요?	 아니요, 놀아요.

A	B
1. 가요?	 1.
2. 뭐 해요?	 2.
3. 공부해요?	 3.
4. 운동해요?	 4.
5. 읽어요?	 5.
6. 뭐 해요?	 6.

A	B
7. 봐요?	 7.
8. 먹어요?	 8.
9. 숙제해요?	 9.
10. 뭐 해요?	 10.
11. 전화해요?	 11.
12. 놀아요?	 12.

# 5 녹차 주세요.

## 1 Things we drink/eat ...

What do we call each of the following items in Korean? Choose a 'name' from the list in the box below.



과일	과자	녹차	맥주
물	배	사과	사이다
술	오렌지	우유	주스
커피	콜라	포도	홍차

## 2 Categories

This is a vocabulary exercise. Put the words in the box under the correct category heading.

Liquor/Beverage	Fruits	Places	
감	교실	굴	극장
딸기	레모네이드	막걸리	매실 주스
복숭아	브랜디	비디오가게	소주
수박	수정과	시내	시장
식혜	역	자두	집
참외	파인애플	포도주	학교

### 3 Word Square

This is a reading exercise. How many places from the vocabulary list in the previous unit can you find in the word square below? You can look horizontally, vertically and diagonally to find them.

커	피	숨	소	공	항	극	형
대	녕	집	세	원	큐	머	장
초	학	습	비	디	오	가	계
병	에	교	버	도	서	관	랴
원	나	실	스	제	은	신	후
올	시	내	터	겨	해	행	촌
학	생	내	미	슈	퍼	마	켓
교	과	서	날	규	우	체	국
오	는	학	백	육	강	늦	라
하	녕	생	화	서	국	의	비
요	음	식	점	미	소	도	실
역	에	당	십	합	시	장	앞



#### 4 Odd one out

Look at the following groups of words and pick the odd one out. Also, explain why it is the odd one.

1. 

꿀	복숭아	사탕
수박	자두	포도

2. 

인천공항	식혜	서울역
롯데백화점	남대문시장	강남터미널

3. 

녹차	레모네이드	소주
식혜	주스	콜라

4. 

은행	우체국	서점
도서관	공항	강의실

5. 

가게	백화점	병원
음식점	커피숍	학생 식당

6. 

아이스크림	사탕	인삼
과자	자두	파인애플

7. 

수박	키위	참외
식혜	딸기	감

8. 

포도주	위스키	맥주
소주	막걸리	물

## 5 Pair Work: Buying things ...

Do this exercise in pairs. In this exercise we practise asking about availability of things in a shop, and if they are available, we also practise asking for them.

If you take the shopkeeper's role, cover the right Column, listen carefully what your partner says, and respond. Things that you have in your shop are listed below.

If you take the customer's role, cover the left Column, and ask your partner if he/she has the things that you need, one by one. If your partner says yes, then ask for it. Things that you need are in the frame below.

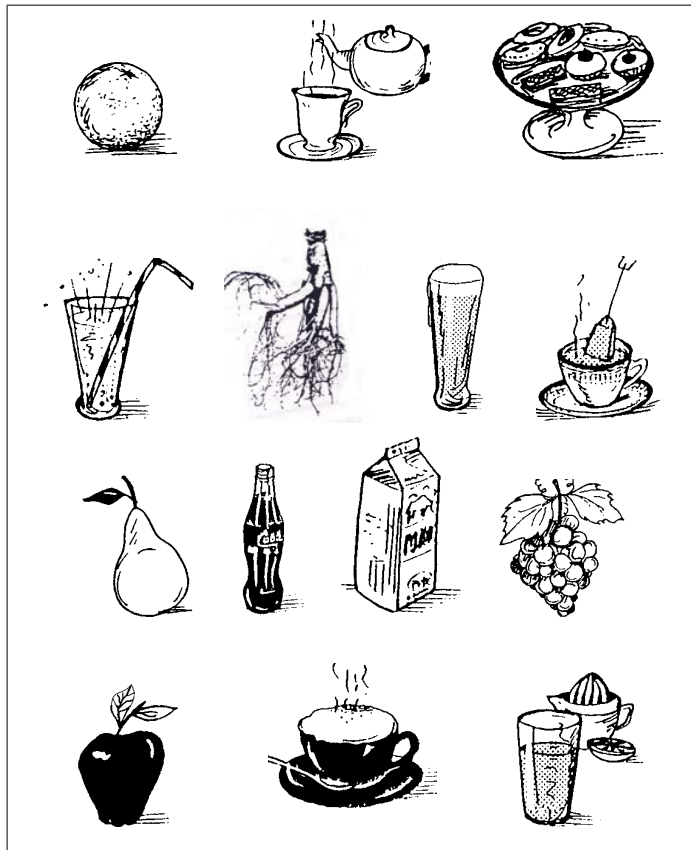
### EXAMPLES

- |    |                             |                             |
|----|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. | Customer: 커피 있어요?           | <i>Do you have coffee?</i>  |
|    | Shopkeeper: 네, 있어요.         | <i>Yes, we do.</i>          |
|    | Customer: 커피 주세요.           | <i>Can I have coffee?</i>   |
|    | Shopkeeper: 네, 여기 있어요.      | <i>Yes, here you are.</i>   |
|    | Customer: 고맙습니다.            | <i>Thanks.</i>              |
| 2. | Customer: 포도주 있어요?          | <i>Do you have wine?</i>    |
|    | Shopkeeper: 미안합니다. 포도주 없어요. | <i>I'm sorry, we don't.</i> |

### Things to sell ...

홍차	포도주
포도	키위
콜라	커피
참외	참외
오렌지	아이스크림
식혜	수정과
수박	소주
사탕	사과
물	매실주
과자	감

### Things to buy ...



## 6 Pure Korean Numbers (1)

Match up the following Arabic numbers on the left with pure Korean numbers (ie pronunciations) on the right. Then cover the right column, and read aloud the numbers.

- |      |        |
|------|--------|
| 1 ●  | ● 넷    |
| 10 ● | ● 다섯   |
| 11 ● | ● 둘    |
| 12 ● | ● 셋    |
| 13 ● | ● 스물   |
| 14 ● | ● 스물넷  |
| 15 ● | ● 스물다섯 |
| 16 ● | ● 스물둘  |
| 17 ● | ● 스물셋  |
| 18 ● | ● 스물아홉 |
| 19 ● | ● 스물여덟 |
| 2 ●  | ● 스물여섯 |
| 20 ● | ● 스물일곱 |
| 21 ● | ● 스물하나 |
| 22 ● | ● 아홉   |
| 23 ● | ● 여덟   |
| 24 ● | ● 여섯   |
| 25 ● | ● 열    |
| 26 ● | ● 열넷   |
| 27 ● | ● 열다섯  |
| 28 ● | ● 열둘   |
| 29 ● | ● 열셋   |
| 3 ●  | ● 열아홉  |
| 4 ●  | ● 열여덟  |
| 5 ●  | ● 열여섯  |
| 6 ●  | ● 열일곱  |
| 7 ●  | ● 열하나  |
| 8 ●  | ● 일곱   |
| 9 ●  | ● 하나   |

## 7 Pure Korean Numbers (2)

All but one of the Pure Korean numbers in the following box can be found in the number table below. Which one is it?

서른넷	마흔하나	하나	스물일곱	여섯
마흔넷	일흔하나	서른	아흔여덟	일곱
예순여덟	여든	아흔일곱	일흔여섯	여넷
여	아흔아홉	스물여섯	일흔넷	마흔여덟
셋	서른하나	여든여덟	일흔	서른일곱
마흔여섯	여든일곱	여여섯	아흔하나	여아홉
마흔	아홉	서른여섯	마흔일곱	스물여덟
든	다섯	넷	여하나	서른여덟

26   27   28   3   30   31   87   88   9   1

10   19   2   11   98   97   13   14   68   7

70   71   38   24   40   41   74   76   99   12

91   16   34   36   37   44   46   47   48   5

## 8 Role Play

Study the conversation piece below, and perform a role play with your fellow students. Your role play can be based on this conversation piece or on your own.

Waitress: 어서 오세요.

David: 수정과 둘하고 매실 주스 하나 주세요.

Waitress: 미안합니다. 매실 주스는 없어요.

David: 그래요? ... 차 있어요?

Waitress: 네, 홍차하고 녹차, 인삼차, 사과차 있어요.

David: 사과차 맛 있어요?

Waitress: 네, 맛 있어요.

David: 그럼, 수정과 둘하고 사과차 하나 주세요.

Waitress: 네, 감사합니다.

NOTES: • 하고: and • 그래요?: Is that right? • 그럼: Well, then



## 6 이거 얼마예요?

### 1 Sino-Korean Numbers (1)

Read aloud the following Sino-Korean numbers.

Alternatively, you can do this exercise in pairs: one person reads the following Sino-Korean numbers aloud and the other writes down the numbers. When finished, swap roles.

8	3	6	1	9	2	4	7	5	10
70	20	30	10	40	80	60	90	50	100
65	75	45	85	55	5	15	25	35	95
14	89	52	35	47	76	0	23	68	91

### 2 Sino-Korean Numbers (2)

Do the same as above. But this time you're practising larger numbers.

400	100	900	600	500	700	200	300	800	1,000
3,000	8,000	6,000	1,000	9,000					
4,000	2,000	5,000	7,000	10,000					
10,000	40,000	70,000	200,000	600,000					
900,000	1,000,000	3,000,000	5,000,000	8,000,000					

### 3 Sino-Korean Numbers (3)

All but one of the Sino-Korean numbers in the following box can be found in the number table below. Which one is it?

사	공	천만	천백	백십만	사만	구	사천
구백	만	백	백만	사백만	천십만	백	십
십	영	오	십만	육	십백	오만	십십만
육만	십천만	이만	육백만	십만	이십	육십만	이
천	육십	오천만	천	이백만	억	천만	백천

4	9	6	3	0	8	2	7	5	1
20	60	10	700	300	100	900	8,000	1,000	
4,000	70,000	30,000	50,000	10,000	60,000	40,000			
20,000	800,000	300,000	700,000	100,000					
2,000,000	6,000,000	1,000,000	4,000,000						
60,000,000	10,000,000	50,000,000	30,000,000						

### 4 Pure Korean Numbers (4)

Practise reading the following pure Korean numbers.

3	10	1	9	2	7	4	8	11	5
6	12	20	80	50	30	70	40	90	60

## 5 More Hangeul Reading and Writing ...

Have a look at the following words. They include Korean words of English origin, countries' names, and English first names. As you read through, you will find that at least one of the Hangeul characters in each word is not right – it is upside-down, rotated, etc. Your task is to locate the 'funny' character and re-write the word as it is supposed to be. See if you can finish this exercise within two minutes.

원|ㄷ서핑

러시ㅅ0

윽거루

코헤라

골ㅂ코스

또거킹

오렌지쥬&lt;ㅣ

프웁스

컴퓨ㅓ

ㅅㅂ바논

룽렉스

ㅁㅂ빈

맥내날드

모모



## 6 Grammar: Verb-Ending

Each of the following sentences contains one grammatical mistake. Your task is to underline, and rectify, each of the mistakes.

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. 개예요.       | 14. 주스 들세요.     |
| 2. 고양이이에요.    | 15. 한국어 공부해요.   |
| 3. 과일 주스 주세요. | 16. 놀어요.        |
| 4. 과자 먹아요?    | 17. 숙제해요.       |
| 5. 대학교에 가아요?  | 18. 시험보어요?      |
| 6. 이야기하어요.    | 19. 운동해요?       |
| 7. 돈이에요?      | 20. 지수씨는 식사하아요? |
| 8. 사진 있어요?    | 21. 집에 오어요.     |
| 9. 선영씨는 잠자어요? | 22. 창문예요.       |
| 10. 수정과 마시어요. | 23. 책이에요.       |
| 11. 여기 보요.    | 24. 책 읽아요.      |
| 12. 의자 없어요.   | 25. 카일리씨 만나아요?  |
| 13. 앉어요.      | 26. 태우씨는 전화해요?  |

## 7 Making New Words ...

Korean nouns usually combine quite freely with each other, and being aware of the combinations can help us to expand our vocabulary at a rapid rate. Look at the following words, and discuss their meanings with your instructor. All of them combine elements from the vocabulary lists we've studied so far.

- 개집
- 과일주스
- 딸기맛
- 딸기아이스크림
- 딸기우유
- 맥주병
- 물개
- 물병
- 병맥주
- 병우유
- 사과주스
- 술집
- 우유병
- 인삼차
- 찻잔
- 찻집
- 포도주스

## 8 있어요, 없어요?

Look at the objects in the frame below and write answers to the questions that follow, depending on whether you find the objects in the frame or not.

1. 커피 있어요?

9. 인삼 있어요?

2. 고양이 있어요?

10. 병 있어요?

3. 개 있어요?

11. 연필 있어요?

4. 개집 있어요?

12. 돈 있어요?

5. 볼펜 있어요?

13. 휴대폰 있어요?

6. 책상 있어요?

14. 사진 있어요?

7. 책 있어요?

15. 술 있어요?

8. 집 있어요?

16. 창문 있어요?



## 9 How many of them ... (1)

Tell us how many of them there are in Korean.

1.



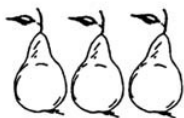
2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



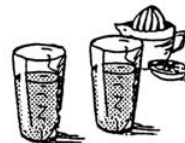
10.



11.



12.



## 10 How many of them ... (2)

Translate the following sentences into Korean and write them in Hangeul.

1. a mandarin

6. ten watermelons

11. four persimmons

2. five cats

7. six peaches

12. two bottles of beer

3. two cups of ginseng tea

8. three hamburgers (햄버거)

13. five taxis (택시)

4. four posters (포스터)

9. seven ice-creams

14. eight dogs

5. three computers (컴퓨터)

10. nine plums

15. a glass of water

## 11 How much are they?

Tell us how much they are in Korean. Use a unit noun wherever appropriate.

<p>1.</p>  <p>SOURCE OF VITAMIN C <b>3.85</b> kg Pink Lady Apples</p>	<p>2.</p>  <p>ARNOTT'S Nice ARNOTT'S Milk Arrowroot 3 for \$3 SAVE 1.62 Arnott's Plain Biscuits 250g Single - 1.54</p>	<p>3.</p>  <p>Save \$30 <b>\$59</b> Ashton leather chair</p>
<p>4.</p>  <p>EVERYDAY LOW PRICE NOW <b>9.98</b> Nescafe Blend 43 Coffee 300g</p>	<p>5.</p>  <p>Haya Desk Flat Pack - 225508 <b>\$179.00</b> Gumstix and Bickmann Store</p>	<p>6.</p>  <p>SAVE 98¢ <b>1.98</b> Golden Circle Juice 2 Litre</p>
<p>7.</p>  <p>Save \$39.00 <b>\$1.48</b> EA.</p>	<p>8.</p>  <p>Cordless Phone with Answering Machine Caller ID, 10 number memory, wall mountable. F 7328 <b>\$134</b> LOW PRICE</p>	<p>9.</p>  <p>7.18 EA IN ANY 6 BOTTLE BUY SAVE 1.78 <b>7.97</b> Jacob's Creek Chardonnay or Merlot 750ml</p>

# 7 한국어 교실

## 1 On the left of the first row is ...

Look at the table below and answer the following questions. Number one has been done for you.

1. 첫째 줄 왼쪽에 뭐 있어요?  
잔 있어요.

2. 첫째 줄 가운데에 뭐 있어요?

3. 둘째 줄 가운데에 책 있어요?

4. 둘째 줄 오른쪽에 뭐 있어요?

5. 사진은 어디 있어요?

6. 사과예요?

7. 넷째 줄 왼쪽에 뭐 있어요?

8. 다섯째 줄 오른쪽에 뭐  
있어요?

9. 밑에서 둘째 줄 왼쪽에 뭐  
있어요?

10. 밑에서 둘째 줄  
가운데에는요?

11. 우유는 어디 있어요?

12. 마지막 줄 왼쪽에 뭐 있어요?

## 2 What's the left of the first row?

Do the same as above. This time, however, we are practising 'identifying' various places. The expression, eg, *the left of the first row*, is not used here to designate the location whereon something is, and thus we don't need to use the particle -에. What we are practising here is simply saying "Where, ie, what place, is the left of the first row?" — "It's a classroom," and so on.

1. 첫째 줄 왼쪽은 어디예요?  
교식이에요.

2. 첫째 줄 가운데는 어디예요?

3. 첫째 줄 오른쪽은 어디예요?

4. 둘째 줄 왼쪽은 어디예요?

5. 둘째 줄 가운데는 어디예요?

6. 둘째 줄 오른쪽은 어디예요?

7. 셋째 줄 왼쪽은 어디예요?

8. 셋째 줄 가운데는 어디예요?

9. 셋째 줄 오른쪽은 어디예요?

10. 밑에서 둘째 줄 왼쪽은 어디예요?

11. 밑에서 둘째 줄 가운데는 어디예요?

12. 밑에서 둘째 줄 오른쪽은 어디예요?

13. 마지막 줄 왼쪽은 어디예요?

14. 마지막 줄 가운데는 어디예요?

15. 마지막 줄 오른쪽은 어디예요?



### 3 Insa revisited: Polite-Formal

This exercise is to help you say Insa, and respond, in the Polite-Formal style.

**Step 1:** Cover Column 2

**Step 2:** Read the first item in Column 1 and try to think of an appropriate response in the **polite-formal** mode. When you have your response, uncover the first item in Column two and check your response against the response in Item 2.

**Step 3:** Repeat for the rest of Column 1. Note that sometimes no specific response is called for.

	Column 1	Column 2
1.	반갑습니다.	네, 반갑습니다.
2.	안녕하십니까?	네, 안녕하십니까?
3.	어서오십시오.	—
4.	미안합니다.	괜찮습니다.
5.	늦어서 미안합니다.	괜찮습니다.
6.	안녕히 가십시오.	네, 안녕히 계십시오. or 네, 안녕히 가십시오.
7.	안녕히 계십시오.	네, 안녕히 가십시오.
8.	앞으십시오.	네, 감사합니다.
9.	또 오십시오.	네, 안녕히 계십시오.



#### 4 Insa revisited: Polite-Informal

Now do the same, this time using the polite-informal style. Again, note that sometimes no specific response is called for.

	Column 1	Column 2
1.	안녕하세요?	네, 안녕하세요?
2.	들어 오세요.	—
3.	앉으세요.	—
4.	안녕히 계세요.	네, 안녕히 가세요.
5.	미안해요.	괜찮아요.
6.	안녕히 가세요.	네, 안녕히 계세요. or 네, 안녕히 가세요.
7.	어서 오세요.	—
8.	안녕하세요?	네, 안녕하세요?
9.	또 오세요.	네, 안녕히 계세요.
10.	늦어서 미안해요.	괜찮아요.

## 5 From Polite Informal to Polite Formal (1)

Review Pages 42 and 43, and change the style of each of following statements into Polite Formal.

1.	2.	3.
먹어요.	공부해요.	나도 학교에 가요.
4.	5.	6.
미안해요.	포도 주스는 없어요.	아니요, 없어요.
7.	8.	9.
네, 여기 있어요.	아주 맛 있어요.	네, 놀아요.
10.	11.	12.
아니요, 써요.	일 킬로에 삼 불 오십 센트예요.	다섯 권에 이십삼만 원이에요.

## 6 From Polite Informal to Polite Formal (2)

Review Pages 42 and 43, and change the style of each of following questions into Polite Formal.

1.	2.	3.
어디 가요?	녹차 있어요?	읽어요?
4.	5.	6.
마셔요?	뭐 해요?	이거 뭐예요?
7.	8.	9.
과일 주스예요?	맛 없어요?	이 오렌지는 얼마예요?
10.	11.	12.
배 몇 개 있어요?	놀아요?	사진 몇 장 있어요?

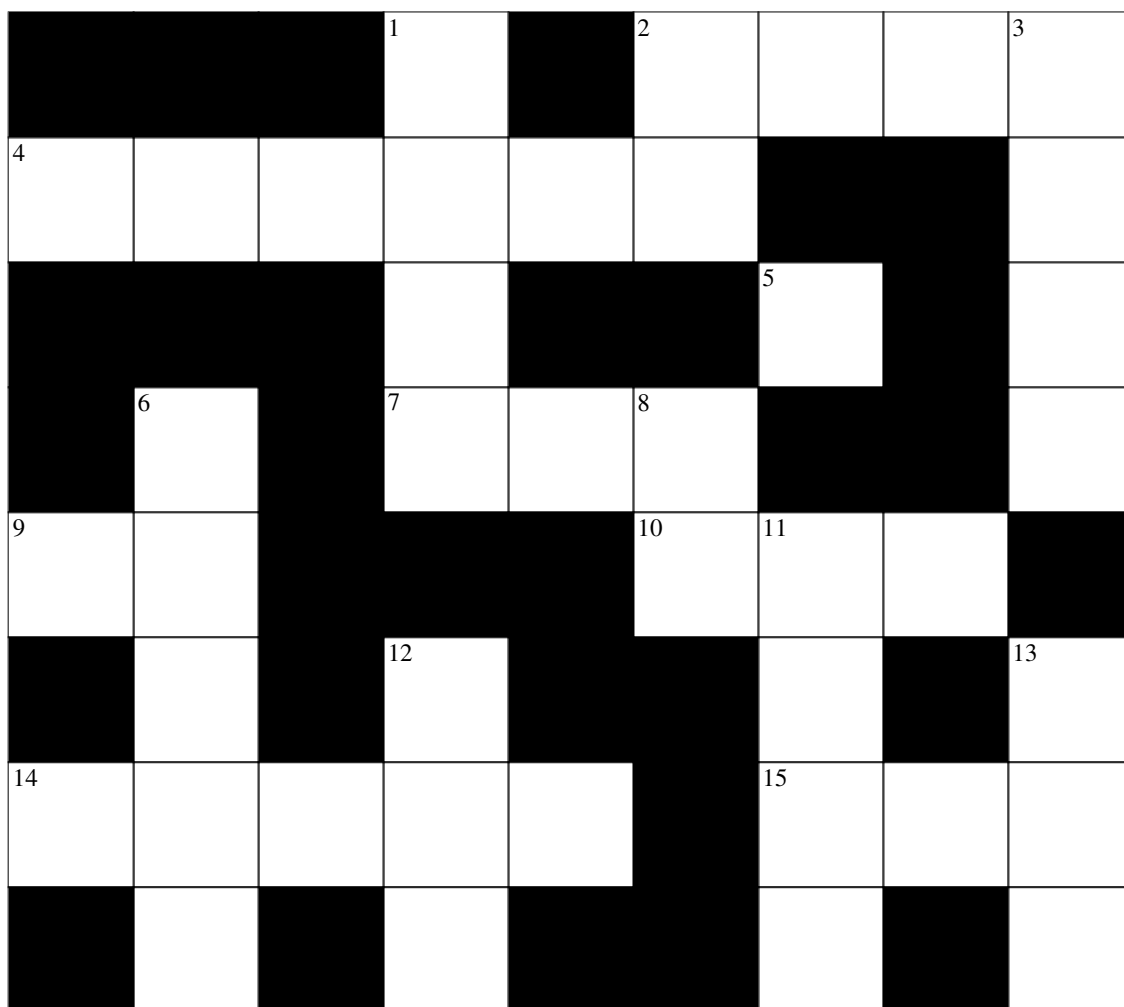
## 7 From Polite Informal to Polite Formal (3)

Review Pages 42 and 43, and change the style of each of following commands into Polite Formal.

1.	2.	3.
소주 주세요.	읽으세요.	마시세요.
4.	5.	6.
공부하세요.	그럼, 녹차 주세요.	과일 드세요.
7.	8.	9.
앉으세요.	노세요.	어서 오세요.
10.	11.	12.
시작하세요.	다섯 개만 주세요.	따라 하세요.

## 8 Crossword

Try this crossword.



### ACROSS

2 “There isn’t/aren’t”; “I don’t have.” (Polite Formal) 4 “Well done!” (Polite Formal) 5 line 7 “All together!” 9 window 10 “Slowly!” 14 “Listen!” (Polite Informal) 15 the right

### DOWN

1 “There is/are”; “I have.” (Polite Formal) 2 Dictionary form of the verb *not have, not be* 3 “Once again!” 6 “I have a question.” (Polite Informal) 8 two thousand 11 one thousand one hundred and fifty 12 “Can I have ... please?” (Polite Informal) 13 on the left hand side

# 8 오후에 시간 있어요?

## 1 What time is it now? (1)

Look at the clock faces below, and tell us what time it is in Korean.



1.



2.



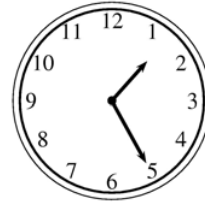
3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



10.



11.



12.

## 2 What time is it now? (2)

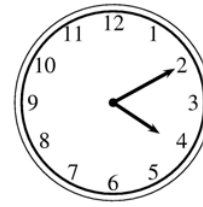
Look at the clock faces below, and tell us what time it is. This time use **Polite Formal** endings.



1.



2.



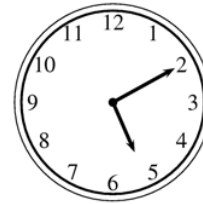
3.



4.



5.



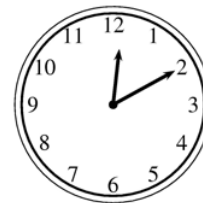
6.



7.



8.



9.



10.



11.



12.

### 3 Pure Korean numbers, again

Read aloud the following Pure Korean numbers.

Alternatively, you can do this exercise in pairs: one person reads the following Pure Korean numbers aloud and the other writes down the numbers. When finished, swap roles.

44	70	1	2	55	66	77	40	50	88	99	19
6	7	46	64	73	82	91	8	9	10	20	30
60	3	4	5	80	90	11	22	33	28	37	12

### 4 Sino-Korean numbers, again

Do the same as above. But this time you're practising Sino-Korean numbers.

10	20	30	40	50	15	25	35	45	55	5	100
300	1,000	8,000	6,000	9,000	5,000						
10,000	40,000	70,000	200,000	600,000	1,000,000						

### 5 Days of the week

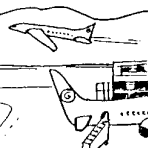








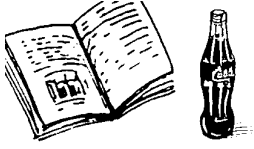





Re-arrange the following days of the week in order. Put Monday first.

금요일 목요일 수요일 월요일 일요일 토요일 화요일



## 6 아니요, ... (1)

This exercise is for practising making negative sentences. Answer the following questions in Korean. For each question, use the picture cue provided. Number 1 has been done for you as an example.

<p>1. 학교에 가요?</p>  <p>아니오, 학교에 안 가요. 공항에 가요.</p>	<p>2. 공부해요?</p> 	<p>3. 콜라 마셔요?</p> 
<p>4. 식사해요?</p> 	<p>5. 사과 먹어요?</p> 	<p>6. 운동해요?</p> 
<p>7. 책 있어요?</p> 	<p>8. 핸드폰이에요?</p> 	<p>9. 과자예요?</p> 
<p>10. 의자 있어요?</p> 	<p>11. 개예요?</p> 	<p>12. 사탕 먹어요?</p> 
<p>13. 집에 가요?</p> 	<p>14. 전화해요?</p> 	<p>15. 놀아요?</p> 

## 7 아니요, ... (2)

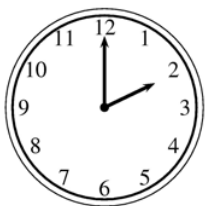
Answer the following questions as in Number 1. Use Polite Formal endings.

<p>1. 잠잡니까?</p>  <p>아니요, 잤 안 잡니다. 공부합니다.</p>	<p>2. 읽습니까?</p> 	<p>3. 밥니까?</p> 
<p>4. 마십니까?</p> 	<p>5. 숙제합니까?</p> 	<p>6. 이야기합니까?</p> 
<p>7. 운동합니까?</p> 	<p>8. 먹습니까?</p> 	<p>9. 전화합니까?</p> 
<p>10. 만납니까?</p> 	<p>11. 식사합니까?</p> 	<p>12. 공부합니까?</p> 
<p>13. 씹니까?</p> 	<p>14. 줍니까?</p> 	<p>15. 갑니까?</p> 

## 8 Are you free at 2.00?

This is a pair-work exercise. Using each of the clock faces below, exchange a short conversation according to the Example.

### Example



One person asks a question:

2시에 시간 있어요?

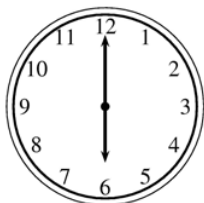
The other person then gives a negative answer with a reason, for instance:

2시는 안 돼요. 약속 있어요.

1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



## 9 When are you free?

This is a class activity to help you practice asking when people are free. Look at the timetable below and mark with a cross the times in a week when you are usually busy.

The Situation: Your Korean class was disrupted last week and your teacher has asked you to find time for an extra class. Various students in your class have various commitments – just as you have, and a time will have to be negotiated. To do this, form a group of four or five and liaise with each other to find a time when everyone is free.

Here are some useful phrases.

• 화요일 오전에 시간 있어요?	Have you got time on Tuesday morning?
• 화요일에 시간 없어요.	I haven't got any free time on Tuesday.
• 네, 괜찮아요.	Yes, that's O.K.
• 화요일 오후 2시 괜찮아요?	Is 2.00 pm on Tuesday O.K.?
• 아니요, 안 돼요.	No, it's no good.

-시	월요일	화요일	수요일	목요일	금요일
8					
9					
10					
11					
12					
1					
2					
3					
4					
5					
6					

## 10 Let's sing: Arirang

There can be few countries in the world where communal singing is more a feature of life than is the case with Korea. Singing is an almost obligatory part of informal partying, and the visitor would be well advised to come prepared to offer a song. Best of all, of course, would be to come with a Korean song, and without doubt the best-known of these is Arirang. Arirang is a folk song, sung on the indigenous Korean five-note scale, and like many folk songs it is not always easy to trace it back in time. It mainly consists of a distinctive chorus with multiple verses which are not always linked in meaning very noticeably to the chorus. What is certain is that it is the most easily recognisable tune in Korea, and well worth taking the time to learn.

Chorus – repeat after every verse

아리랑 아리랑 아라리요

아리랑 고개로 넘어간다

1) 나를 버리고 가시는님은

십리도 못 가서 발병 난다

2) 풍년이 온다네 풍년이 와요

이 강산 삼천리에 풍년이 와요

3) 청천 하늘엔 별도 많고

이 내 가슴엔 수심도 많다

아리랑

조금느리게 한국 민요

Like many folk songs, the literal meaning of Arirang is not very susceptible to analysis and there is little or no thematic continuity in the verses. Everyone has their own special understanding of what the song really means – our understanding is as follows.

The Chorus: The chorus suggests a tone of lament – literally ‘(My love) has gone over the hill.’

Verse 1: (The idea) ‘He’s thrown me over and gone, but he won’t even go ten li before he gets footsore.’ implying that he will come straight back again.

Verse 2: (The idea) ‘It’s been a season of plenty all through the land.’ – no discernible connection with Verse 1, but a cheering sentiment in a song that is heavily used as a farming and rice-planting song.

Verse 3: (The idea) ‘There are as many stars in the sky as there are sorrows in my heart.’ – a somewhat conventional expression of sentimentalised sorrow.

**Language Notes:** ● 아리랑: device like ‘tra-la-la’ ● 고개: mountain pass ● 로: by way of ● 넘어간다: has gone over ● 나: me ● 를: object marker ● 버리고: cast aside (and...) ● 가시는: (one who is) going ● 님: my lord/my love ● 가시는 님은: my love who is going ● 은: topic marker ● 십리: distance of ten li (approximately 4km) ● 도: even ● 못 가서: unable to go ● 발병: lameness (‘foot sickness’) ● 난다: has occurred, happened ● 풍년: abundant harvest ● 이: subject marker ● 온다네: has come! ● 와요: has come ● 이: these ● 강산: mountains and rivers ● 삼천리: 3,000 li ● 이강산 삼천리에: in these 3,000 li of mountains and rivers – poetic reference to Korea ● 청천: azure blue ● 하늘: the sky ● 엔: in ● 별: stars ● 도: also, too ● 많고: are many (and ...) ● 이: this ● 내: my ● 가슴엔: in (my) heart ● 수심: sorrows ● 많다: are many

## 9 어느 나라에서 왔어요?

### 1 Where does she come from?

Answer the following questions. Number one has been done for you as an example.

<p>1</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요? 호주에서 왔어요.</p>	<p>2</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>	<p>3</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>
<p>4</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>	<p>5</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>	<p>6</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>
<p>7</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>	<p>8</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>	<p>9</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>
<p>10</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>	<p>11</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>	<p>12</p>  <p>어느 나라에서 왔어요?</p>

## 2 Is he an Australian?

Answer the following questions. Number one has been done for you as an example.

<p>1</p>  <p>이탈리아 사람이에요? 아니요, 미국사람이에요.</p>	<p>2</p>  <p>러시아 사람이에요?</p>	<p>3</p>  <p>말레이시아 사람이에요?</p>
<p>4</p>  <p>이란 사람이에요?</p>	<p>5</p>  <p>파키스탄 사람이에요?</p>	<p>6</p>  <p>스페인 사람이에요?</p>
<p>7</p>  <p>인도네시아 사람이에요?</p>	<p>8</p>  <p>베트남 사람이에요?</p>	<p>9</p>  <p>몽고 사람이에요?</p>
<p>10</p>  <p>대만 사람이에요?</p>	<p>11</p>  <p>이라크 사람이에요?</p>	<p>12</p>  <p>헝가리 사람이에요?</p>

### 3 Where is it located? (1)

Make sentences according to the Example.

Example

런던/영국

**Question:** 런던은 어디에 있어요?

**Response:** 런던은 영국에 있어요. 런던은 영국의 수도예요.

**NOTE:** If we want to say that London is the capital city of the UK, we then say “런던은 영국의 수도예요.” Here, 의 is the possessive marker, equivalent to 's or of in English, and is pronounced as e in everyday speech.

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. 서울/한국        | 11. 캔버라/호주      |
| 2. 평양/북한        | 12. 뉴델리/인도      |
| 3. 베이징(북경)/중국   | 13. 이슬라마바드/파키스탄 |
| 4. 도쿄(동경)/일본    | 14. 이스탄불/터어키    |
| 5. 타이페이/대만      | 15. 모스크바/러시아    |
| 6. 방콕/타일랜드      | 16. 와싱턴/미국      |
| 7. 마닐라/필리핀      | 17. 베를린/독일      |
| 8. 쿠알라룸푸르/말레이시아 | 18. 파리/프랑스      |
| 9. 하노이/베트남      | 19. 로마/이탈리아     |
| 10. 자카르타/인도네시아  | 20. 헤이그/네덜란드    |

### 4 Where is it located? (2)

Make sentences according to the example.

Examples

Big Ben (빅벤)

**Question:** 빅벤은 어디에 있어요?

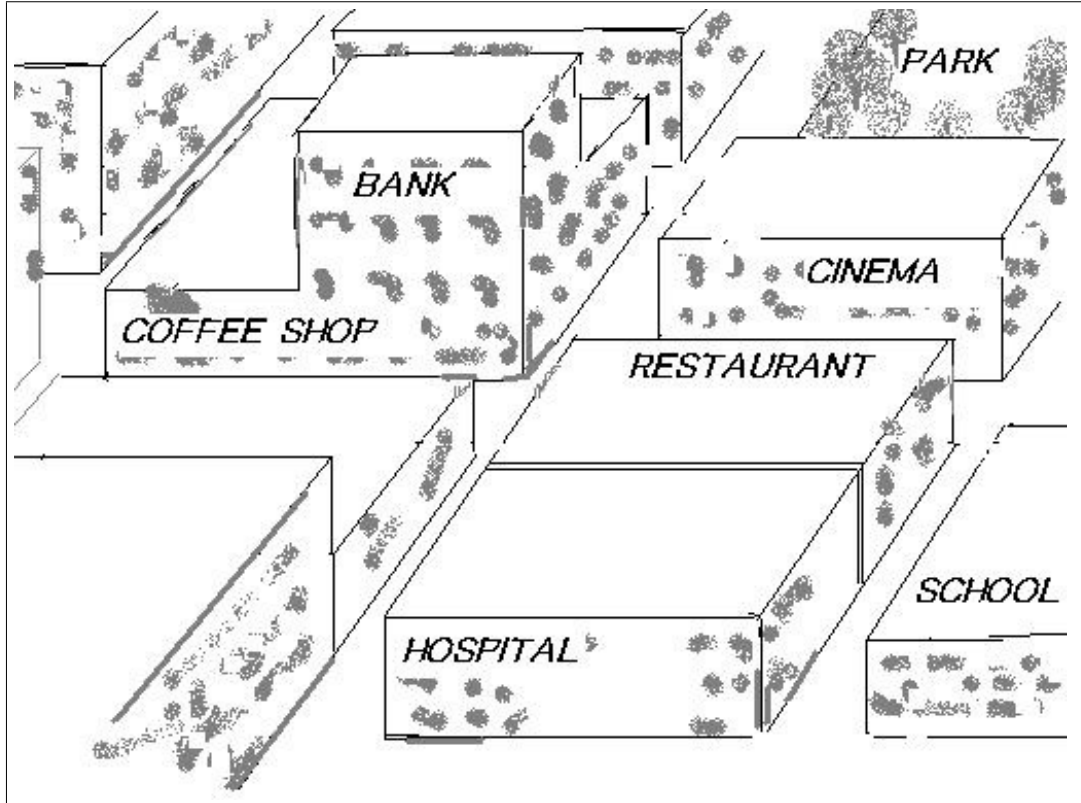
**Response:** 영국 런던에 있어요.

- |                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. The Eiffel Tower (에펠 타워) | 8. The Colosseum (콜로세움)             |
| 2. Ayer's Rock (에이어스록)      | 9. the Parthenon (파르테논 신전)          |
| 3. Disneyland (디즈니랜드)       | 10. Golden Gate Bridge (골든게이트 브릿지)  |
| 4. The Great Wall (만리장성)    | 11. Halong Bay (하롱베이)               |
| 5. Mt Fuji (후지산)            | 12. The Petronas Twin Towers (트윈타워) |
| 6. Siberia (시베리아)           | 13. Ancorwat (앙코르와트 사원)             |
| 7. The Taj Mahal (타지마할)     | 14. The Charles Bridge (찰스 브릿지)     |



## 5 The street map

This is a pair-work exercise. Look at the sketch map below, and practise making questions and answers according to the Example.



### Example 1

A: 이 근처에 은행 있어요?

B: 네, 있어요.

### Example 2

A: 이 근처에 역 있어요?

B: 아니요, 없어요.

Now ask if the following facilities and amenities can be found nearby.

대학교

음식점

커피숍

우체국

가게

병원

극장

공원

학교

슈퍼마켓

버스 터미널

운동장

## 6 What floor is it on?

**The situation:** Below is a diagram of a building in a shopping centre. On each floor there are a number of shops and businesses. Someone is asking you about them, and your task is to describe which floor they are located on.

**Question 1** 비디오 가게는 몇 층에 있어요?

**Response** 비디오 가게는 오 층에 있어요.

**Translation** The video shop is on the 5th floor.

**Question 2** 극장은요?

**Translation** And the cinema?

**NOTES:**

빌딩 = building;

SK - 층 = the SK-th floor;

화장실 = toilette

8	호텔		현 대 빌 딩
7	나이트클럽		
6	극장		
5	비디오 가게		
3	슈퍼마켓		
2	커피숍	음식점	
1	우체국	은행	

**CULTURAL NOTE:**

Often there's no fourth floor on Korean buildings, especially if the building is a hospital. This is because the word for 'four' (sa - ) is pronounced in the same way as the word for 'death' – and obviously no one wants to spend much time on 'the death floor'!

**Extension exercise 1:** Think a bit about the building you study Korean in. Which of the following rooms and facilities are to be found in it? Make sentences to describe what floor they're located on. For example,

이 빌딩에 전화 있어요. 육층에 있어요.  
도서관은 없어요. ...

전화	도서관	커피숍
화장실	식당	강의실
서점	가게	컴퓨터실

**Extension exercise 2:** Now try the same activity for the Student Union, or whatever the main building on your campus is called.

식당	도서관
서점	슈퍼마켓
나이트클럽	우체국
병원	극장
술집	비디오가게
커피숍	은행

## 7 The menu

This is a revision exercise. Printed below is a menu from a coffee shop in Seoul. Imagine that you are describing its contents in Korean for another person, and make sentences as in the Example.

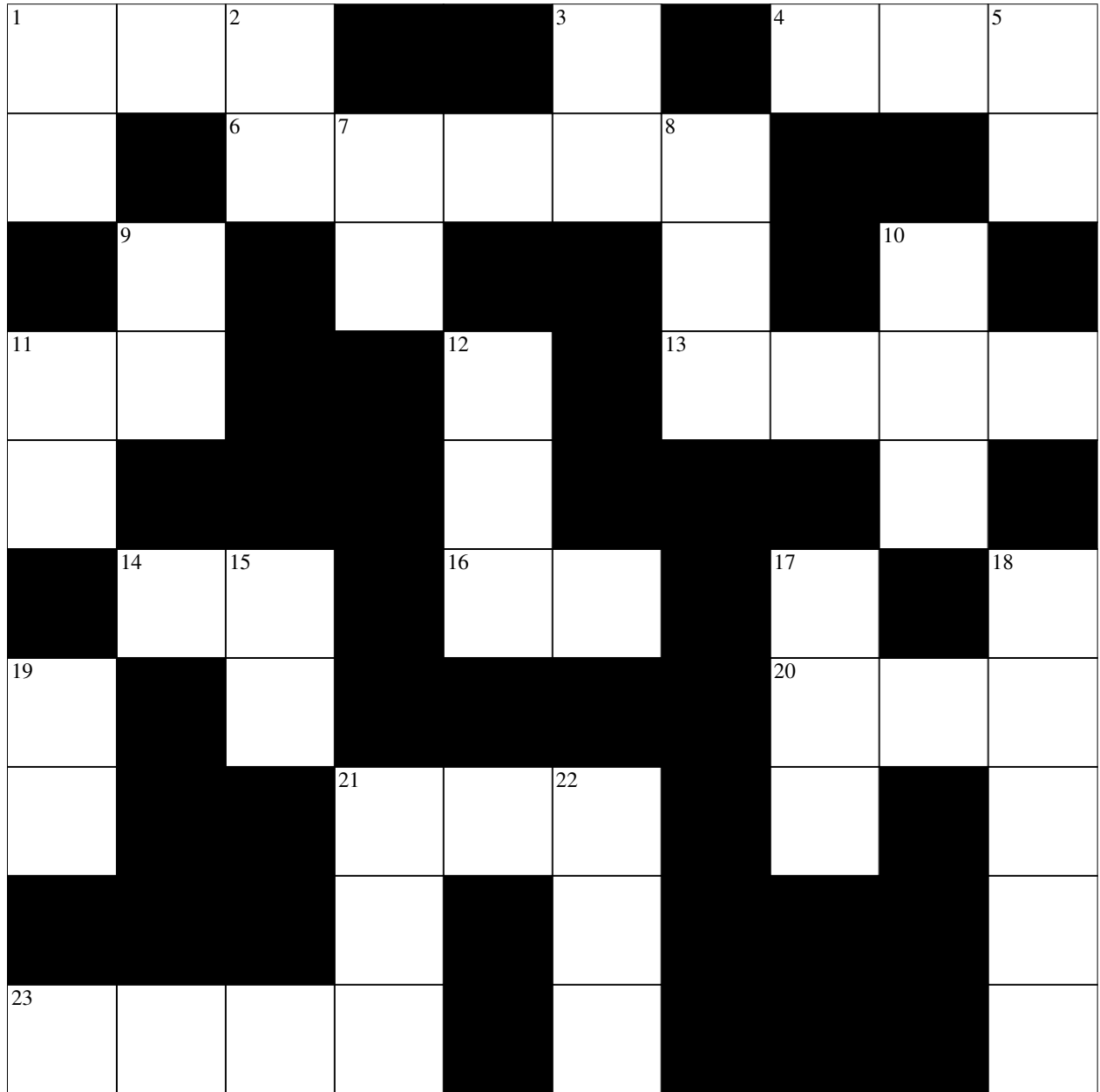
Examples

커피는 8,000원이에요.



## 8 CROSSWORD

Try this crossword.



**ACROSS** 1 in Class 4 India 6 Northeast Asia  
11 a little 13 "It's difficult." 14 Germany  
16 the West 20 Russia 21 'canned' beer (as  
opposed to 'bottled' beer) 23 Which country?

**DOWN** 1 capital city 2 Middle East 3 four  
o'clock 5 nine (a PK number) 7 North Korea  
8 The Arabic Language 9 now 10 "It's easy."  
11 Korea (DPRK) 12 France 15 Japan  
17 Ladies and Gentlemen! 18 South America  
19 the vicinity 21 Canberra 22 "Please give  
me ..."

## 9 Role Play

Study the conversation piece below, and perform a role play with your fellow students. Your role play can be based on this conversation piece or on your own.

Tae-U: 애니씨는 어느나라에서 왔어요?  
 Annie: 호주에서 왔어요.  
 Tae-U: 호주 어디서 왔어요?  
 Annie: 네?  
 Tae-U: 호주 ... 어디서 왔어요?  
 Annie: 아, 네, 시드니에서 왔어요.  
 Tae-U: 그래요? 시드니는 뭐로 유명해요?  
 Annie: 글썄요. 오페라 하우스, 하버 브릿지, ...  
 시드니는 여러 가지로 유명해요.  
 Tae-U: 시드니는 추워요?  
 Annie: 아니요, 아주 따뜻해요. 시드니에 아직 안  
 가봤어요?  
 Tae-U: 네, 아직 안 가 봤어요.  
 Annie: 한 번 가 보세요. 아주 좋아요.

### Language Notes:

- 호주 어디서: *Where about in Australia*
- 여러 가지: *various kinds (of things)*
- 아직 안 ...: *haven't (done ...) yet*
- Note also how to respond to a negative question in Korean, eg, *Aren't you ...?*, *Don't you ...?*, etc. Unlike in English, 네 is used to 'negatively' disagree, and 아니요 to 'positively' disagree, with the question that has been asked. Thus:

시드니에 아직 안 가봤어요?	Haven't you been to Sydney yet?
네, 아직 안 가봤어요.	No (Lit. Yes), I haven't. (ie, <i>negative disagreement</i> )
아니요, 가봤어요.	Yes (Lit. No), I have. (ie, <i>positive disagreement</i> )

# 10 몇 시에 일어났어요?

## 1 Dates (1)

Practise pronouncing the following Korean dates, then write them down in Hangeul. Note that the Month has been put before the date.

Alternatively, you can do this exercise in pairs: one person reads the following dates aloud and the other writes down the numbers. When finished, swap roles.

1.1	3.6	6.8	4.15	1.30	9.13	11.14
12.2	2.22	7.29	7.8	10.31	9.19	7.27
12.12	2.23	8.15	9.9	6.28	5.23	4.17
7.1	12.25	11.22	5.6	12.29	6.5	10.8
5.8	10.10	8.6	9.26	6.16	10.21	3.4

## 2 Dates (2)

Do the same as above. But this time you're practising years as well.

1919.3.1	1945.8.15	1948.7.17	1950.6.25	1953.7.27
1960.4.19	1961.5.16	1972.7.4	1972.10.17	1979.10.26
1980.5.18	1987.6.29	1988.9.17	1988.10.2	1990.10.3
1997.11.17	2000.1.1	2000.6.15	2002.5.31	2002.6.30

### 3 When's your birthday?

This is a questionnaire exercise. Ask as many of your fellow students as you can when their birthdays are and enter them in the grid below

#### Example

Question: ...씨, 생일이 몇월 며칠이에요?

If, for example, the answer is 7 July

Response: 7월 7일이에요.

	이름	생일
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		

Language Note: • 이름 = name

#### 4 The past tense marker (I)

Look at the Verb ‘conjugation’ table below, which is incomplete, and your task is to complete it.

	VST	Meaning	Polite Informal Statement PRESENT TENSE	Polite Informal Statement PAST TENSE
1.	가-	to go	가요	갔어요
2.	가보-	to go and have a look	가봐요	가봤어요
3.	고맙-	to be grateful	고마워요	고마웠어요
4.	공부하-	to study	공부해요	공부했어요
5.	괜찮-	to be all right	괜찮아요	괜찮았어요
6.	놀-	to play	놀아요	As in 5
7.	덥-	to be hot	더워요	As in 3
8.	돌아가-	to go back	돌아가요	As in 1
9.	돌아오-	to come back	돌아와요	As in 2
10.	따뜻하-	to be warm	따뜻해요	As in 4
11.	마시-	to drink	마셔요	마셨어요
12.	만나-	to meet	만나요	As in 1
13.	만들-	to make	만들어요	만들었어요
14.	많-	to be many	많아요	As in 5
15.	말하-	to speak	말해요	As in 4
16.	먹-	to eat	먹어요	As in 13
17.	모르-	to not know	몰라요	몰랐어요
18.	반갑-	to be glad (to see you)	반가워요	As in 3
19.	배우-	to learn	배워요	배웠어요
20.	보-	to see/look at	봐요	As in 2
21.	살-	to live	살아요	As in 5
22.	숙제하-	to do homework	숙제해요	As in 4
23.	쉽-	to be easy	쉬워요	As in 18
24.	시작하-	to begin	시작해요	As in 4
25.	시험보-	to take an exam	시험봐요	As in 2



## 5 The past tense marker (II)

Do the same as above.

	VST	Meaning	Polite Informal Statement PRESENT TENSE	Polite Informal Statement PAST TENSE
26.	식사하-	to have a meal	식사해요	As in 4 on the previous page
27.	쓰-	to write	써요	썼어요
28.	알-	to know	알아요	As in 5
29.	어떻-	to be how	어때요	어땀어요
30.	어렵-	to be difficult	어려워요	As in 3
31.	없-	to not have	없어요	As in 13
32.	연습하-	to practise	연습해요	As in 4
33.	오-	to come	와요	As in 2
34.	운동하-	to exercise	운동해요	As in 4
35.	유명하-	to be famous	유명해요	As in 4
36.	이-	to be	이에요/예요	이었어요/였어요
37.	이야기하-	to talk	이야기해요	As in 4
38.	일어나-	to wake up	일어나요	As in 3
39.	읽-	to read	읽어요	As in 13
40.	있-	to have	있어요	As in 13
41.	잊어버리-	to forget	잊어버려요	As in 11
42.	잠자-	to sleep	잠자요	As in 3
43.	재미 없-	to be boring	재미 없어요	As in 13
44.	재미 있-	to be interesting	재미 있어요	As in 13
45.	적-	to be few	적어요	As in 13
46.	전화하-	to telephone	전화해요	As in 4
47.	좋-	to be good	좋아요	As in 5
48.	주-	to give	주어요	주었어요 but see 19
49.	춥-	to be cold	추워요	As in 3
50.	하-	to do	해요	As in 4

## 6 Yesterday I did ...

This is a questionnaire exercise. Ask the following questions to five of your fellow students and enter the responses in the grid below.

### Example

Question: 어제 몇시에 일어났어요?

Response: 다섯시에 일어났어요.

	학생 1 이름	학생 2 이름	학생 3 이름	학생 4 이름	학생 5 이름
어제 몇시에 일어났어요?					
몇 시에 아침식사를 했어요?					
몇 시에 학교에 갔어요?					
몇 시에 점심식사를 했어요?					
몇 시에 집에 갔어요?					
몇 시에 저녁식사를 했어요?					
몇 시에 잠을 잤어요?					
어제 몇 시간 공부했어요?					
한국어 수업이 있었어요? 몇 시간 있었어요?					
운동은 안 했어요? 얼마 동안 했어요?					
잠은 몇 시간 잤어요?					

## 7 에 vs 에서

The particle -에 indicates progress towards a goal (and is also used with some time expressions), and the particle -에서 indicates the location of an action. Read the following sentences and fill in the blank space with either -에 or -에서 where appropriate. Discuss your answers with your fellow student.

### Example

2 시..... 만납시다. ⇒ 2 시에 만납시다.  
 학생 식당..... 만납시다. ⇒ 학생 식당에서 만납시다.

1. 지금 학교..... 가요?
2. 교실..... 뭐 할까요?
3. 도서관..... 같이 한국어를 공부할까요?
4. 오늘 집..... 일찍 돌아갑시다.
5. 호텔 커피숍..... 만납시다.
6. 내년..... 한국..... 갑시다.
7. 아니요, 금년 12월..... 한국..... 갑시다.
8. 한국 음식점..... 식사할까요?
9. 내일 호텔 레스토랑..... 아침 식사를 합시다.
10. 저녁..... 같이 공부할까요?
11. 이번 주말에 산..... 갈까요?
12. 맥도날드..... 햄버거를 먹을까요?
13. 오후..... 친구 생일파티..... 가요.
14. 학교..... 연습합시다.
15. 저녁..... 술 한 잔 마십시다.
16. 다음 주말..... 카일리씨 집..... 일본 음식을 만들까요?
17. 아니요, 오늘 오후..... 데이비드씨 집..... 한국 음식을 만듭시다.

## 8 Using Particles

This exercise is to help you get used to putting together simple sentences in Korean. Make sentences according to the model and also to the translations. Note in particular the use of particles (case markers).

### Example

그 사람/어제/데이비드씨를/만나-      That person met David yesterday.  
그 사람은 어제 \_ 데이비드씨를 만났어요.

1. 그 학생/책/많이/읽-      The student reads a lot of books.
2. 저 학생/텔레비전/많이/보-      That student (over there) watches TV a lot.
3. 학교 근처/음식점/아주/많-      There are lots of restaurants near university.
4. 그 학생/주말/숙제/다/하-      That student finished the homework over the weekend.
5. 태우씨/어제/오후/휴대폰/사-      Tae-U bought a mobile phone yesterday afternoon.
6. 선영씨/어제/오후/고양이/사-      Seon-Yeong bought a cat yesterday afternoon.
7. 애니씨/김치/조금/먹어보-      Annie tried a little bit of kimchi.
8. 저 학생/일본말/조금/하-      That student (over there) speaks a little Japanese.
9. 카일리씨/지난 주말/한글/많이/쓰-      Kylie wrote lots of Hangeul last weekend.
10. 어제/한국어 수업/아리랑/듣-      We listened to the 'Arirang' yesterday in the Korean class.
11. 태우/어제/여섯 시/일어나-      Tae-U got up at six o'clock yesterday.
12. 오후/친구/운동/하-      I exercised with my friend in the afternoon.
13. 대학교/한국어/배우-      I learn Korean at university
14. 낮/한국어/연습하-      I practised Korean during the day.
15. 데이비드씨/밤/커피/안/마시-      David doesn't drink coffee at night.
16. 한국/김치/유명하-      Korea is famous for Gimchi.
17. 애니씨/어제/한국어 수업/늦게/오-      Annie came late to the Korean class yesterday.
18. 밑/셋째 줄/왼쪽/고양이/있-      On the left of the third last line is a cat.
19. 오늘/오후 1시/한국 음식점/친구/점심/먹-  
I had lunch with my friend at a Korean restaurant at 7.30 yesterday.
20. 어제/저녁/7시 반/중국 음식점/친구/저녁식사/하-  
I had dinner with my friend at a Chinese restaurant at 7.30 yesterday.

## 9 Some real life questions

Answer the following questions in Korean.

1. 지금 어디서 살아요?
2. 10년 전에 어디서 살았어요?
3. 외국에 가봤어요? 어느 나라에 가봤어요?
4. 외국어를 공부해봤어요?
5. 어제 오후 5시에 뭐 했어요?
6. 지난 주말에 뭐 했어요?
7. 이번 주말에 뭐 해요?
8. 한국어 수업은 1 주일에 몇 시간 있어요?
9. 하루에 몇 시간 한국어를 공부해요?
10. 한국 친구하고 같이 한국어를 연습해요?
11. 오늘은 몇월 며칠이에요?
12. 내일은 월요일이에요?
13. 한국어는 얼마 동안 공부했어요?
14. 어제 저녁에 어디서 식사했어요?
15. 금년은 몇 년이에요? 내년은요?

# 11 많이 드세요.

## 1 WORD SQUARE

See how many words relating to food you can find in the word-square below. You can look horizontally, vertically and diagonally to find them.

고	추	나	두	맛	땅	돈	깻
유	간	장	부	태	떡	콩	잎
각	파	반	집	시	찌	개	비
떡	찬	닭	양	고	기	빔	고
비	장	고	찬	기	름	추	볶
소	고	기	마	가	장	닭	깻
포	빵	늬	시	무	밥	우	상
국	장	녹	근	마	야	생	추
오	배	추	치	후	선	채	이
근	이	잎	오	식	차	해	묵

## 2 Using -(으)르 까요

Suggest to people that you meet at the following times and places, using the VST – (으)르 까요? form.

### Example

at 1.00 at the airport today

오늘 한 시에 공항에서 만날까요?

Shall we meet at 1 o'clock at the airport today?

1. at 9.00 tomorrow at the university
2. at 11.00 this Saturday at the park
3. at 15.00 today at the movie theatre
4. at 12.00 this Sunday at Seoul station
5. at 3.00 p.m. at the coffee shop
6. at 5.00 at the library
7. at 2.00 this afternoon at the bus terminal
8. at 10.00 at the student canteen
9. at 6.00 this evening at the hospital
10. at 11.00 this morning at the bank
11. at 2.00 this Sunday at the park
12. at 7.00 p.m. this Saturday at In-cheon Airport

### 3 Shall we ...?/Yes, let's ...

Transform the following verb-stems into 'Shall we ...?' questions, and then into 'Yes, let's ...' answers.

<b>Example</b>		
하-	할까요?	Shall we do it?
	네, 합시다.	Yes, let's do it.

1. 같이 숙제하-
2. 친구를 만나-
3. 간장을 2 병 사-
4. 후식을 주문하-
5. 불고기를 먹어보-
6. 닭고기 요리를 만들-
7. 햄버거를 사먹-
8. 수업을 시작하-
9. 책을 읽-
10. 지금 식사하-
11. 한국어를 공부하-
12. 오후에 전화하-
13. 선생님하고 이야기하-
14. 텔레비전을 보-
15. 공항에 가-
16. 12시에 잠을 자-
17. 그리고 4시에 일어나-
18. 젓가락을 쓰-
19. 사과 주스를 마시-
20. 지금 돈을 내-



## 4 Using Negatives

Answer *negatively* to the following questions. For each question use the picture cue provided. Number one has been done for you as an example.

<p>1.</p>  <p>포크하고 나이프로 먹어요? 아니요, 포크하고 나이프로 안먹어요. 젓가락으로 먹어요.</p>	<p>2.</p>  <p>무예요?</p>
<p>3.</p>  <p>여기 과일이 있어요?</p>	<p>4.</p>  <p>양고기를 좋아해요?</p>
<p>5.</p>  <p>된장이에요?</p>	<p>6.</p>  <p>간장은 매워요?</p>
<p>7.</p>  <p>지금 텔레비전을 봐요?</p>	<p>8.</p>  <p>선영씨는 개를 좋아해요?</p>

## 5 What did you eat yesterday?

Do this exercise in pairs. One of you asks a question: 어제 뭐 먹었어요?, and the other answers using the picture cue provided. You then exchange at least one follow-up question and the answer. Number one has been done for you as an example.

<p>1.</p>  <p>어제 뭐 먹었어요? 불고기 먹었어요. 어디서 먹었어요? 한국 음식점에서 먹었어요.</p>	<p>2.</p> 	<p>3.</p> 
<p>4.</p> 	<p>5.</p> 	<p>6.</p> 
<p>7.</p> 	<p>8.</p> 	<p>9.</p> 

## 6 Find someone who likes ...

This is a class activity. Your objective is to find someone in the class who likes one or more of the following. Write the names of up to three students who answer 'Yes'. in the spaces provided.

TARGET QUESTION: 한국 음식: 한국 음식을 좋아해요?  
 POSITIVE ANSWER: 네, 한국 음식을 좋아해요.  
 NEGATIVE ANSWER: 글썄요.

In case you haven't met '글썄요.' before, it is the equivalent of English 'We-ell...', and it carries the idea of negativity effectively – and more politely – than a brusque '아니요'.

불고기:	(1)	(2)	(3)
비빔밥:	(1)	(2)	(3)
김치:	(1)	(2)	(3)
스파게티 (Spaghetti):	(1)	(2)	(3)
미트파이 (Meat-pie):	(1)	(2)	(3)
락사 (Laksa):	(1)	(2)	(3)
인삼차:	(1)	(2)	(3)
커피:	(1)	(2)	(3)
맥주:	(1)	(2)	(3)
포도주:	(1)	(2)	(3)
위스키:	(1)	(2)	(3)
골프:	(1)	(2)	(3)
테니스:	(1)	(2)	(3)
짜즈:	(1)	(2)	(3)
힙합:	(1)	(2)	(3)
한국 영화:	(1)	(2)	(3)
한국 노래:	(1)	(2)	(3)
개:	(1)	(2)	(3)
고양이:	(1)	(2)	(3)

**Language Notes:** 영화 = movie; 노래 = songs

## 7 MAKING DIALOGUE

Make a dialogue to fit the following situation.

- You have been invited to a Korean home. **Your host** greets you at the door, and invites you in.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- **You** say hello to your host.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- **Your host** asks you to sit down, and offers you a cola.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- **You** accept the cola.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- You and your host talk for while, and then **your host** suggests that you both eat.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- You all sit at the table. **Your host** invites you to begin.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- **You** eat a plateful and remark on how delicious it is.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- **Your host** asks if you like Gimchi.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- **You** reply yes, it's delicious.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- **Your host** then invites you to have more Galbi.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- By now, **you** feel you've had enough and decline.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- The meal finishes, and **you** say you've eaten well and add what a good meal it has been.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

## 8 Role Play

Study the following conversation piece, and do role plays with fellow students on the basis of the piece or on your own. Below, Seon-Yeong is arranging with Annie to go to a Korean restaurant.

선영: 이번 토요일에 시간 있어요?

Annie: 네?

선영: 이번 토요일에 시간 있어요?

Annie: 아, 네, 시간있어요.

선영: 한국 음식 어때요? 좋아해요?

Annie: 네, 좋아해요.

선영: 갈비 먹어 봤어요?

Annie: 아니요. 갈비가 어때요? 맛 있어요?

선영: 네, 맛 있어요. 학교 근처에 갈비집이 많아요. 같이 갈까요?

Annie: 네, 같이 가요. 몇 시에 갈까요? 음 ... 6시 괜찮아요?

선영: 네, 괜찮아요.

Annie: 그럼, 5시 반에 학교 커피숍에서 만나요.

**Language Notes:** 아, 네 = Oh, I see ...; 음 ... = uhm ...; 그럼, ... = well, then ...

### TRANSLATION

S: Are you free this Saturday?  
 A: Pardon?  
 S: Are you free this Saturday?  
 A: Ah – I understand now. Yes, I'm free.  
 S: What do you think of Korean food? Do you like it?  
 A: Yes, I do.  
 S: Have you tried pork Galbi (spare ribs)?  
 A: No. What's it like? Is it nice?  
 S: Yes it is. There are quite a few Galbi places around near the school. Shall we go?  
 A: Sure. What time shall we go? Let's see, is 6 o'clock OK?  
 S: Yeah, fine.  
 A: Well, then, let's meet at the coffee shop at 5.30.

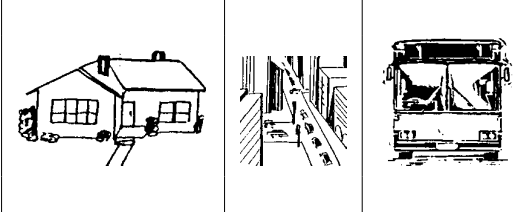


# 12 기차로 가요, 버스로 가요?

## 1 From ... to ...












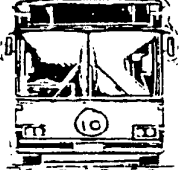






Look at the pictures below and make sentences according to the Example.

Example



집에서 시내까지 버스로 갔어요.

(1)


(5)				
(6)				
(7)				
(8)				
(9)				
(10)				

## 2 HOW MUCH? HOW FAR?

The following table contains basic express bus travel information, giving fares, distance and journey times between Seoul and a number of major Korean cities. Read the table and make sentences according to the Examples. The fares are in won, and the distances are in kilometers.

	차비	거리	시간
서울 — 부산	70,000	441	5.30
서울 — 경주	60,000	363	4.30
서울 — 대구	55,000	297	4.00
서울 — 대전	28,000	153	2.00
서울 — 전주	37,000	233	3.30
서울 — 광주	50,000	320	4.00
서울 — 강릉	42,000	232	4.00

### Examples

How much ..?: 서울에서 ... 까지 차비가 얼마예요?

How far ..?: 서울에서 ... 까지 거리가 얼마나 돼요?

How long ..?: 서울에서 ... 까지 몇 시간쯤 걸려요?



### 3 Jumbled Conversation

This is a reading comprehension exercise. Following is a scrambled conversation between Ji-Su and David. Unscramble it and write it in the space provided. Ji-Su has just met David after not seeing him for a few days.

David: 9번 버스를 타요.  
 David: 네, 오래간만이에요.  
 David: 시내에 가요.  
 지수: 요즘 어떠세요?  
 지수: 어디 가요?  
 David: 네, 잘 지내요.  
 지수: 몇 번 버스를 타요?  
 지수: 그래요? 그럼, 같이 갑시다.  
 지수: 오래간만이에요.  
 David: 네, 그럼시다.

### 4 Using the particle 도

This exercise is to help you practice using the particle 도. Answer B's question in each example positively using the particle -도. Number one has been done for you.

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. A: 철수는 순희를 좋아해요.<br>B: 영수는요?<br>영수도 순희를 좋아해요. | 6. A: 캔맥주를 샀어요.<br>B: 병맥주는요?   |
| 2. A: 태우는 한국말을 공부해요.<br>B: 일본말은요?                | 7. A: 불고기를 주문했어요.<br>B: 냉면은요?  |
| 3. A: 한국에 갔다왔어요.<br>B: 일본에는요?                    | 8. A: 고양이를 좋아해요.<br>B: 선영씨는요?  |
| 4. A: 집에서 저녁식사를 해요.<br>B: 아침식사는요?                | 9. A: 한국신문을 읽어요.<br>B: 중국신문은요? |
| 5. A: 이번 주말에 산에 가요.<br>B: 지수는요?                  | 10. A: 잡채를 주문했어요.<br>B: 만두는요?  |

## 5 Which bus goes where?

The table below lists the starting point and the terminus for a number of bus routes. Refer to it to answer the questions that follow.

QUESTION: 83번 버스는 어디까지 가요?

ANSWER: 83번 버스는 이태원까지 가요.

	어디서	어디까지?
83번	서울역	이태원
53번	명동	동대문
142번	서울대학교	김포공항
342번	종로 1가	남산
586번	시청앞	연세대학교
7번	이태원	비원
39번	신세계앞	고속버스터미널
23번	고대앞	동대문시장

1. 586번 버스는 어디서 출발해요?
2. 비원에 가는 버스는 몇번이에요?
3. 39번 버스는 어디까지 가요?
4. 23번 버스는 어디서 어디까지 가요?
5. 비원에 가는 버스는 어디서 출발해요?
6. 이태원에 가는 버스는 몇번이에요?
7. 586번 버스는 연세대학교에 가요?
8. 142번 버스는 어디까지 가요?

## 6 THE STREET MAP

Look at the street map below and fill in the blanks. Number one has been done for you as an example.



1. 호텔은 은행 옆에 있어요.
2. \_\_\_\_\_은 커피숍 옆에 있어요.
3. 역은 호텔 \_\_\_\_\_에 있어요.
4. \_\_\_\_\_은 은행 오른쪽 옆에 있어요.
5. \_\_\_\_\_은 우체국 뒤에 있어요.
6. 공원은 호텔 \_\_\_\_\_에 있어요.
7. 역은 공원 \_\_\_\_\_에 있어요.
8. 화장실은 공원 \_\_\_\_\_에 있어요.
9. 백화점은 호텔 \_\_\_\_\_에 있어요.
10. 커피숍은 음식점 \_\_\_\_\_에 있어요.
11. \_\_\_\_\_는 병원 맞은편에 있어요.
12. 서점은 음식점 \_\_\_\_\_에 있어요.
13. 여행사는 슈퍼 \_\_\_\_\_에 있어요.
14. 빵집은 공원 \_\_\_\_\_에 있어요.
15. \_\_\_\_\_은 우체국 왼쪽 옆에 있어요.

## 7 Conversation Activities

This is a conversation exercise about commuting and travelling in general. Form a small group and practise asking and answering the following questions.

### Travelling to class

- 집에서 학교까지 거리가 얼마나 돼요?  
 학교에는 어떻게 와요?  
 학교에는 몇 번 버스/전차로 와요?  
 차비가 얼마예요?  
 집에서 학교까지 몇 시간쯤 걸려요?  
 오늘은 몇 시에 집에서 출발했어요?  
 학교에는 몇 시에 도착했어요?  
 집에는 몇 시에 돌아가요? (돌아가- = to return)

### Your Recent Trips

Have you taken any trips lately – local? interstate? overseas? See if you can recount the details of the trip by using the following sentences.

1. 지난 .....에 .....에  
갔다왔어요.
2. ....(으)로 갔다왔어요.
3. ....하고 갔다왔어요.
4. ....시에 집을 떠났어요.
5. ....까지 .....시간 걸렸어요.
6. ....에서 .....했어요.
7. ....에는 .....시간/일/주일  
있었어요.
8. ....에는 .....일부터  
.....일까지 있었어요.
9. ....시에 .....을/를  
떠났어요.
10. ....시에 집에 돌아왔어요.

1. *Last ..... I went to ..... (use 주말, days of the week, or months of the year)*
2. *I went there by .....*
3. *I went there with .....*
4. *I left home at ..... o'clock.*
5. *It took ..... hours to get to .....*
6. (What did you do when you got there – did you have a meal, for example?)
7. *We were there for ..... hours/days/weeks.*
8. *We were there from ..... to ..... (Give dates.)*
9. *We left there at ..... o'clock.*
10. *We arrived home at .....*

## 8 Making Dialogue

In small groups, make a dialogue to fit the following situation.

1. You want to go to the beach tomorrow, and you want your friends to go with you. You ask them what they're doing, and would they like to go to the seaside.
2. They say yes, suggest you all go together, and ask if you've got a car.
3. You say you have, and ask whereabouts should you all meet.
4. They suggest the station, and ask where you're planning to go.
5. You say Seaview (씨뷰) Beach is good.
6. They ask how far is it?
7. You tell them it's twenty kilometres, and that it should take half an hour to get there.
8. They ask you what time you should leave.
9. You suggest nine o'clock, and that you'll arrive at the beach at nine thirty.
10. Perhaps because all these details make you sound like a tour guide, they ask, as a joke, how much the fare will be.
11. You answer twenty dollars a person!

## 13 가족

### 1 Reading Practice

Read the following conversation and answer the questions that follow. In the conversation Annie and her friend 선영 are talking about their families.

선영: 식구가 모두 몇 사람이에요?

Annie: 모두 네 사람이에요. 선영씨는요?

선영: 모두 다섯 사람이에요.

Annie: 어머니하고 아버지하고 또 누가 있어요?

선영: 네, 오빠가 하나, 언니가 하나 있어요.

Annie: 오빠는 지금 뭘 해요?

선영: 오빠는 지금 은행에 다녀요.

Annie: 그래요? 언니는요?

선영: 언니는 대학생이에요. 그런데, 애니씨는 부모님이 계세요?

Annie: 네, 계세요.

선영: 언니, 오빠는요?

Annie: 없어요. 남동생이 하나 있어요. 지금 고등학교에 다녀요.

### QUESTIONS

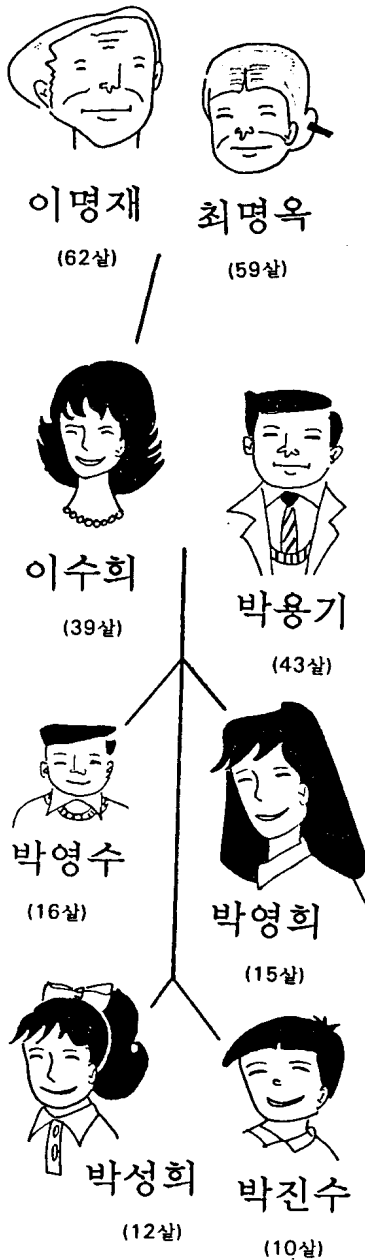
1. 애니씨는 식구가 몇 사람이에요?
2. 선영씨는 식구가 몇 사람이에요?
3. 선영씨는 형제자매가 몇 있어요?
4. 선영씨는 오빠가 있어요? 언니는요?
5. 선영씨는 동생이 있어요?
6. 애니씨는 부모님이 계세요?
7. 선영씨는요?
8. 애니씨는 오빠가 있어요? 언니는요?
9. 애니씨는 동생이 있어요?
10. 선영씨의 오빠는 지금 뭘 해요? 언니는요?
11. 애니씨의 동생은 지금 뭘 해요?

## 2 The Family Tree

Look at this family tree and describe the relationship between the pairs of people that follow.

Example

영희 — 성희 ⇒ 영희는 성희의 언니예요.



1. 이명재씨 — 성희
2. 박용기씨 — 이수희씨
3. 진수 — 영희
4. 성희 — 이수희씨
5. 진수 — 박용기씨
6. 이수희씨 — 성희
7. 최명옥씨 — 이수희씨
8. 최명옥씨 — 박용기씨
9. 이명재씨 — 최명옥씨
10. 최명옥씨 — 진수
11. 이수희씨 — 박용기씨
12. 영희 — 영수
13. 성희 — 박용기씨
14. 진수 — 이수희씨
15. 영희 — 진수
16. 영수 — 진수
17. 영수 — 성희
18. 진수 — 영수

### 3 How long since ...?

Transform the following sentences according to the Example. In this Example we are assuming that the conversation took place in 2003.

Example

김선생의 딸은 1988년에 태어났어요. Mr Kim's daughter was born in 1988.	⇒	김선생의 딸이 태어난 지 15년이 됐어요. Mr Kim's daughter was born ten years ago.
--	---	--

1. 영수는 1985에 서울로 이사왔어요.
2. 심선생은 1982년에 결혼했어요.
3. 할머니는 1979년에 돌아가셨어요.
4. 그 아기는 2000년에 죽었어요.
5. 저는 1990년에 한국에 갔다왔어요.
6. 영수와 명희는 1993년에 약혼을 했어요.
7. 저는 2002년에 한국말 공부를 시작했어요.
8. 안선생은 1999년에 호주에 왔어요.
9. 저는 1998년에 새차를 샀어요.
10. 저는 2001년에 한국에 가 봤어요.
11. 영수는 1990년에 수원으로 이사갔어요.
12. 저는 1997년에 인도에 갔다왔어요.
13. 저는 1992에 시드니로 이사왔어요.
14. 영수와 명희는 2000년에 애인이 됐어요.



#### 4 Particles

Choose the appropriate particle from the following list and write it in the blank spaces in the sentences below.

(에)서부터 (으)로 (으)로 해서 가/이 까지 부터  
에 에서 와/과 은/는 을/를 의

1. 고모..... 아버지..... 누나..... 여동생이에요.
2. 관광객들..... 경주..... 부산..... 서울..... 기차..... 여행..... 했어요.
3. 그 외국 손님..... 일본 친구..... 일본 식당..... 스키야키.....  
먹었어요.
4. 내 친구..... 아침마다 미국 학생..... 역..... 18번 버스..... 타고.
5. 동생..... 다섯시..... 공원..... 친구..... 만났어요.
6. 설악산 가는 버스..... 여섯시..... 역 앞..... 출발해요.
7. 손님..... 슈퍼마켓..... 간장..... 샀어요.
8. 아버지..... 오늘 아침..... 공항..... 여기..... 버스..... 왔어요.
9. 외할머니..... 어머니..... 어머니예요.
10. 이모..... 어머니..... 언니..... 여동생이에요.
11. 저..... 어제밤 일곱시..... 열시..... 집..... 한국어..... 공부했어요.
12. 저..... 젓가락..... 음식..... 잘 먹어요.
13. 지난 주말..... 김교수님..... 학생들..... 기차..... 산..... 갔어요.
14. 학생들..... 점심 시간..... 도서관..... 한국말..... 연습해요.
15. 할아버지..... 아버지..... 아버지예요.

## 5 Vocabulary Exercise

Here are three columns containing items of vocabulary. Your task is to write the columns again, placing the words from the same category on the same line. Number 1 is done for you.

	A	B	C
1.	아침	손가락	언니
2.	겨울	점심	비
3.	병	잡지	교과서
4.	포크	잔	봄
5.	개	눈	인도
6.	비빔밥	돼지	통
7.	포도	문	저녁
8.	신문	불고기	만두
9.	누나	독일	창문
10.	바람	배	젓가락
11.	러시아	가을	동
12.	의자	북	고양이
13.	우체국	오빠	자전거
14.	비행기	극장	배
15.	남	굴	병원

	A	B	C
1.	아침	점심	저녁
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			
9.			
10.			
11.			
12.			
13.			
14.			
15.			

## 6 Conversation: the Family (1)

Form yourselves into groups, designate who will be 학생 #1, #2, #3, #4, and then fill in the questionnaire sheet about family members below. Mark the appropriate boxes with ticks and crosses.

Remember that this is not just an automatic tick-off exercise, but a real-life conversation activity. This means that you should take into account what you can see and what you may already know about the members of your group. It wouldn't be appropriate, for example, to ask young undergraduates if they have children, and so on.

The types of questions you will need to ask are:

You ask: 형제자매가 있어요?  
 Your partner answers: 네, 둘 있어요.  
 You then ask: 여동생이에요? 남동생이에요?, and so on

	학생#1	학생#2	학생#3	학생#4
언니				
누나				
오빠				
형				
남동생				
여동생				
할아버지				
할머니				
아들				
이모				
고모				
큰아버지				
작은 아버지				
외삼촌				

Finally, sum up the family composition of your conversation partners with the following sentence pattern

...씨는 누나가 둘 있어요. 형도 하나 있어요. 그리고 동생도 하나 있어요.

(“... has two older sisters, an older brother, and a younger brother.”)

## 7 Conversation: the Family (2)

This is a group conversation activity. Form a small group and practice asking and answering the following questions.

- 이름이 어떻게 돼요?
- 몇년에 태어났어요?
- 어디서 태어났어요?
- 어디서 자랐어요?
- 부모님이 계세요?
- 부모님은 어디서 자라셨어요?
- 부모님은 어디에 사세요?
- 여기로 이사온 지 얼마나 됐어요? or  
언제 여기로 이사왔어요?
- 형제자매가 있어요?
- 결혼했어요?
- 결혼한 지 얼마나 됐어요?
- 아이가 있어요?

As an extension exercise, think of a family member and answer the above questions from his/her point of view. For example, if you choose your mother:

“제 이름은 MARY예요. 1949년에 태어났어요.”

and so on.

## 8 How long has it been ...?

This is a group discussion activity. Form a small group with your colleagues and ask questions according to the Example.

### Example

Question: 한국말 공부를 시작한 지 얼마나 됐어요?  
How long since you started studying Korean?  
Response: 한국말 공부를 시작한 지 한달이 됐어요.  
It's been a month since I started studying Korean.

Now try the following questions. Remember that some of them may not be entirely appropriate to your group.

1. 한국음식을 먹어본 지 ...
2. 재미있는 영화를 본 지 ...
3. 외국에 가 본 지 ...
4. 한국음식점에서 식사한 지 ...
5. 이 학교를 다닌 지 ...
6. 한국어 숙제를 한 지 ...
7. 파티에 가 본 지 ...
8. 한국사람을 만난 지 ...
9. 관광여행을 한 지 ...
10. 편지를 쓴 지 ...
11. 지금 집으로 이사온 지 ...
12. 햄버거를 먹어 본 지 ...
13. CD를 산 지 ...
14. 재미있는 팝송을 들어 본 지 ...
15. 바닷가에 가 본 지 ...

## 9 Word Square

Including repetitions, the word square below contains twenty-seven words relating to family relationships. Can you find them?

형	할	어	병	남	동	생	부
가	나	머	맥	자	아	선	모
자	매	니	니	매	들	딸	님
누	책	산	아	동	생	형	제
나	아	세	내	이	언	니	호
오	빠	버	악	모	아	들	님
동	장	소	지	남	편	빠	매
생	두	고	엇	할	아	버	지
삼	촌	모	님	모	부	조	카

## 10 I'd like to introduce ...

We did a conversation exercise in the above, in which you exchanged personal information with each other, asking questions such as

- 몇 년에 태어났어요?
- 어디서 태어났어요?
- 어디서 자랐어요?
- 부모님도 거기서 자라셨어요?
- 지금 어디서 사세요?
- 여기로 이사온 지 얼마나 됐어요?
- 형제자매가 있어요?

Now we're inviting you to introduce one of your colleagues to the class on the basis of the information gained during that exercise, and to help you we've set out a standard format below. Where the format doesn't fit the case of the person whom you're introducing, you'll need to improvise.

Note that this is a formal situation, and so we use formal language.

여러분, .....씨를 소개하겠습니다.☞  
 .....씨는 .....에서 태어났습니다. 그리고  
 .....에서 자랐습니다. 거기서 학교도 다녔습니다.  
 지금 .....에서 삽니다. 부모님과 같이 삽니다.  
 .....씨는 형제자매가 셋 있습니다. 남동생이 둘,  
 여동생이 하나 있습니다.  
 .....씨는 이 학교에 다닌지 .....년이  
 되었습니다. 한국어 공부를 시작한지는 .....년이  
 되었습니다. 아직은 한국에 못 가 봤습니다.

☞ 'I propose to introduce ...'

## 14 전공이 뭐예요?

### 1 I'm going to ...





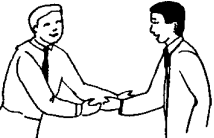





What are you going to do tomorrow, next week, next year? Look at the time words at the beginning of the following sentences and complete them accordingly using -(으)르거예요.

1. 오늘은
2. 오늘 저녁에는
3. 내일은
4. 이번 주말에는
5. 다음 주 월요일에는
6. 다음 주 화요일에는
7. 다음 주말에는
8. 금년 10월에는
9. 금년 12월에는
10. 내년에는
11. 내년 3월에는





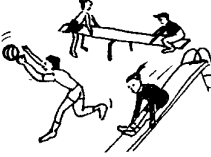
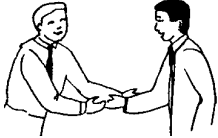

## 2 I want to do ...

Look at the picture cues below and make sentences using -고 싶어요. Number 1 has been done for you.

<p>1</p>  <p>불고기를 먹고 싶어요.</p>	<p>2</p> 
<p>3</p> 	<p>4</p> 
<p>5</p> 	<p>6</p> 
<p>7</p> 	<p>8</p> 
<p>9</p> 	<p>10</p> 

## 3 He/She wants to do ...

Do the same as above. However, this time we are talking about someone else's wants, and thus we make sentences using -고 싶어해요. Number 1 has been done for you.

<p>1</p>  <p>불고기를 먹고 싶어해요.</p>	<p>2</p> 
<p>3</p> 	<p>4</p> 
<p>5</p> 	<p>6</p> 
<p>7</p> 	<p>8</p> 
<p>9</p> 	<p>10</p> 

#### 4 THE OVERSEAS STUDENTS

This is a reading comprehension exercise. The table below gives five different categories of information about five Korean students who are planning to study overseas. The five categories are 1) the country in which they're going to study, 2) their study major, 3) their home town in Korea, 4) the major foreign language they speak, and 5) the university they attend in Korea. Your task is to consult the table and the information it contains in order to fill in the blanks in the sentences that follow.

Example	
첫째 학생은 .....에서 공부할 거예요.	→ 첫째 학생은 미국에서 공부할 거예요.

학생1	학생2	학생3	학생4	학생5
미국	영국	호주	대만	일본
의학	경영학	영문학	공학	경제학
대구	대전	부산	광주	서울
영어	독어	불어	중어	일어
고대	연대	서울대	서강대	부산대

1. 첫째 학생은 .....에서 공부할 거예요.
2. 둘째 학생은 .....에서 왔어요.
3. 다섯째 학생은 .....를 다녀요.
4. 셋째 학생은 .....를 해요.
5. 넷째 학생은 .....을 전공할 거예요.
6. 넷째 학생은 .....를 해요.
7. 셋째 학생은 .....를 다녀요.
8. 첫째 학생은 .....에서 왔어요.
9. 다섯째 학생은 .....에서 공부할 거예요.
10. 둘째 학생은 .....을 전공할 거예요.
11. 대전 학생은 .....에서 공부할 거예요.

12. 서강대 학생은 .....에서 공부할 거예요.
13. 서울대 학생은 .....에서 공부할 거예요.
14. 대구 학생은 .....을 전공할 거예요.
15. 서울 학생은 .....를 해요.
16. 서울 학생은 .....를 다녀요.

## 5 QUESTIONNAIRE: SCHOOLDAYS

Below is a questionnaire about the things you liked and didn't like when you were at primary and secondary school. Form a small group and ask each other the questions below.

### 초등학교

- 몇 살 때 초등학교에 들어갔어요?
- 어느 초등학교를 다녔어요?
- 학교가 어땠어요? 재미있었어요?
- 학생이 많았어요? 몇 명이었어요?
- 외국어를 배웠어요?
- 학교는 어떻게 다녔어요? 버스로 다녔어요? 아니면 걸어서 다녔어요?
- 집에서 학교까지 얼마나 걸렸어요?
- 방학 때는 무엇을 했어요?

### (중)고등학교

- (중)고등학교는 언제 다녔어요?
- 어느 (중)고등학교를 다녔어요?
- 학교가 어땠어요? 재미 있었어요?
- 학생이 많았어요? 몇 명이었어요?
- 선생님들이 잘 가르쳤어요?
- 외국어를 배웠어요?
- 한 학기에 몇 과목 공부했어요?
- 무슨 과목을 싫어했어요?
- 무슨 과목을 좋아했어요?
- 학교는 어떻게 다녔어요? 버스로 다녔어요? 아니면 걸어서 다녔어요?
- 집에서 학교까지 거리가 얼마나 됐어요?
- 방학 때는 무엇을 했어요?

## 6 QUESTIONNAIRE: UNIVERSITY

Below is a questionnaire relating to university life, the courses you're doing/have done, and graduation. As in the previous Activity, form a small group and ask each other questions as follows. Remember that not all of them may be appropriate to the members of your group.

- 언제 입학했어요?
- 대학교에서 공부하기가 어때요? 재미 있어요?
- 전공이 뭐예요?
- 이번 학기에 무슨 과목을 들으세요?
- 무슨 과목이 어려워요?
- 무슨 과목이 쉬워요?
- 지난 학기에 무슨 과목을 들었어요?
- 성적은 어땠어요?
- 대학교에 입학하기 전에 뭐 했어요?
- 지금 부모님과 같이 살아요? 아니면 기숙사에서 살아요?
- 아르바이트를 해요? 무슨 아르바이트를 해요?
- 졸업은 언제 할 거예요?
- 졸업한 후에 뭘 할 거예요? 외국에 여행을 갈 거예요? 취직을 할 거예요?

## 7 WHAT DID YOU DO YESTERDAY?

This is a questionnaire exercise. Firstly, write a list of up to nine activities that comprised your daily routine yesterday. They can be any things, and they needn't be consecutive actions.

Next, form a group of three students, and exchange information on what you all did, linking the different actions using VST - 기 전에 or VST - (은)ㄴ 다음에 as appropriate.

	Yourself	Partner 1	Partner 2
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			
9.			

## 8 I WANT TO ...

This is a questionnaire activity to help you to express your likes and dislikes. Form a small discussion group and ask each other questions that follow from the cue words below. You may have to use your imagination to ask interesting and meaningful questions, AND DON'T FORGET TO ASK FOLLOW-UP QUESTIONS!

Example	
Cue word	한국
Question	한국에 가고 싶어요?
Responses	네, 가고 싶어요. or 굳세요. 안 가고 싶어요.

And when you finish, relate to the class how the other members of your group responded as follows:

Example
...씨는 한국에 가고 싶어해요.

	학생 1	학생 2	학생 3	학생 4	학생 5
한국					
내년에					
한국어					
자동차					
불고기					
한국음식점					
아르바이트					
시험					
주말에					
여자친구/남자친구					
할머니					
유럽					

## 9 At parties ...

See how many different activities you can think of for each of the following situations.

Example

AT PARTIES, I ...

Response

술도 마시고 친구들과 이야기도 하고 음식도 먹어요.

Now try these. To help you along, here's a checklist drawn from the verbs you've had to date:

가-	가보-	공부하-	구경하-	놀-	돈을 벌-	듣-	마시-
만나-	만들-	먹-	먹어보-	배우-	보-	사-	살-
숙제하-	시작하-	식사하-	쓰-	운동하-	이야기하-	일어나-	읽-
연습하-	잠자-	전화하-	주-	주문하-	하-		

1. ON WEEKENDS, I ...

2. AT A RESTAURANT, I ...

3. EVERY MORNING BEFORE GOING OUT, I ...

4. AT THE PARK, I ...
















5. IN THE CLASSROOM, WE ...



## 10 The looong sentence ...

Look at the pictures in the box below and carry on the chain sentence. Use -이고 where the item, ie the 'name' of the item, ends in a consonant, and -고 where the item ends in a vowel.

첫째줄 왼쪽은 ..... (이)고, 가운데는 ..... (이)고, 오른쪽은 ..... (이)고, 둘째줄 왼쪽은 ..... (이)고, and so on.

### Language Note:

통 = box, container; 물통 = water bucket; 전화기 = telephone; -기 = device, machine

## 11 I want to do ..., but ...

Join the following sentences using -지만, as shown in the example.


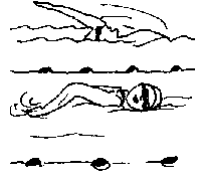


Example	
한국어 공부를 많이 하고 싶어요. 시간이 없어요.	→ 한국어 공부를 많이 하고 싶지만 시간이 없어요. I want to learn English properly but I don't have the time.

1. 한국에 가고 싶어요. 돈이 없어요.
2. 한국어를 잘 하고 싶어요. 좀 어려워요.
3. 바닷가에 가고 싶었어요. 너무 추웠어요.
4. 애니씨는 파티에 가고 싶어했어요. 애니씨 남자 친구는 안  
가고 싶어했어요.
5. 친구 집에 전화를 하고 싶어요. 전화 번호를 잊어버렸어요.
6. 사촌형은 대학원에 가고 싶어했어요. 성적이 안 좋았어요.
7. 고모부는 대학교 때 의학을 전공하고 싶어했어요. 그냥  
경영학을 전공했어요.
8. 선영씨를 만나고 싶어요. 지금 외국에 있어요.
9. 주말에 친구하고 같이 극장에 가고 싶어요. 월요일에 한국어  
시험을 봐요.
10. 텔레비전을 보고 싶어요. 숙제가 많아요.

# 15 야구할 줄 알아요?

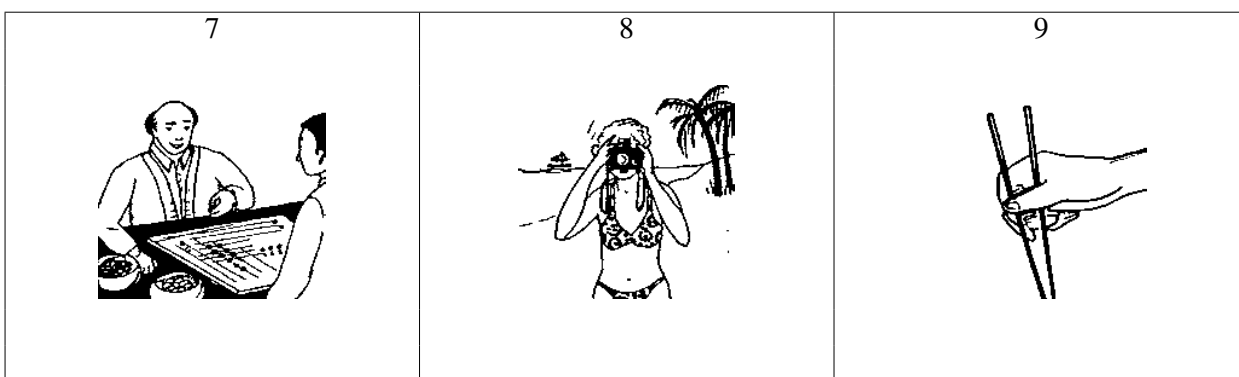
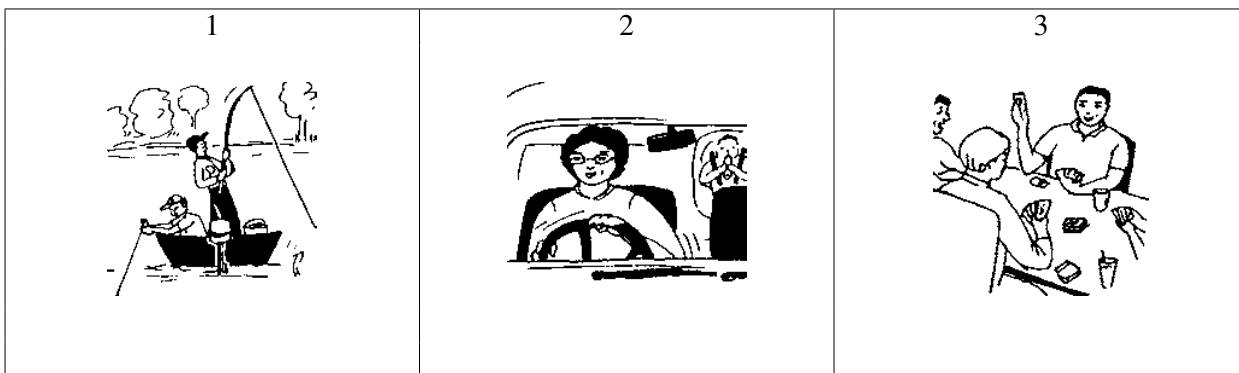
## 1 Do you know how to ...? (1)

Look at the picture cues below and make sentences using -(으)ㄴ 줄 알아요? Number 1 has been done for you.

<p>1</p>  <p>탁구 치 줄 알아요?</p>	<p>2</p> 	<p>3</p> 
<p>4</p> 	<p>5</p> 	<p>6</p> 
<p>7</p> 	<p>8</p> 	<p>9</p> 
<p>10</p> 	<p>11</p> 	<p>12</p> 

## 2 Do you know how to ...? (2)

Do the same as for the previous exercise.







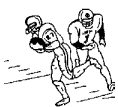
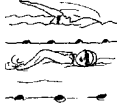
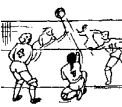














## 3 Do you do ...?

Look at the picture cues below again and make sentences, this time, using -아/어/...해요 ending.  
(You can use -(으)세요 ending if you wish to sound more polite.) Number 1 has been done for you.

1.  탁구 쳐요?	2. 	3. 
4. 	5. 	6. 
7. 	8. 	9. 
10. 	11. 	12. 
13. 	14. 	15. 
16. 	17. 	18. 
19. 	20. 	21. 

## 4 Conversation Exercise

Do the previous exercise again, but this time in pairs. One person (A) asks a question, and the other (B) provides an answer. For various ways of formulating your answers, see Page 88 in the Textbook.













1.  A: B:	2.  A: B:	3.  A: B:
4.  A: B:	5.  A: B:	6.  A: B:
7.  A: B:	8.  A: B:	9.  A: B:
10.  A: B:	11.  A: B:	12.  A: B:
13.  A: B:	14.  A: B:	15.  A: B:
16.  A: B:	17.  A: B:	18.  A: B:
19.  A: B:	20.  A: B:	21.  A: B:

## 5 Have you been to ...?

Look at the picture cues below, formulate appropriate questions and respond as in the Example. You should give real-life answers based on your actual experience.

Example		
Question	한국에 가 봤어요?	
Responses	네, 가 봤어요. or 아니오, 아직 못 가 봤어요.	

1 	2 	3 
4 	5 	6 
7 	8 	9 
10 	11 	12 

## 6 WORD SQUARE

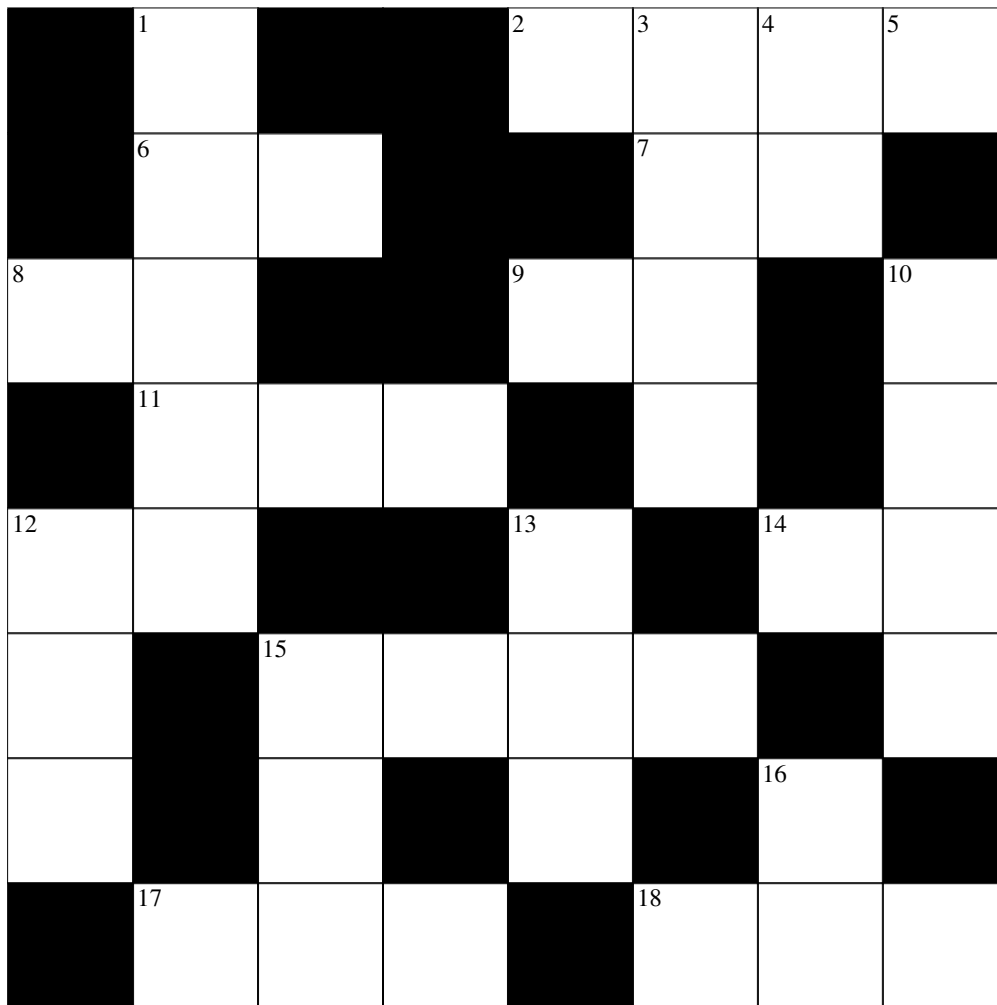
Including repetitions, the word square below contains eighteen words relating to sports, hobbies and pastimes. Can you find them?

탁	구	장	테	낙	독	서
운	파	두	니	공	시	림
야	구	도	스	키	원	름
우	권	내	타	수	력	비
표	산	투	영	기	영	크
수	등	배	축	체	조	리
집	어	산	구	육	상	켓



## 7 Crossword

Try this crossword.



### ACROSS

2 stamp collecting 6 boxing 7 waves (cf surfing) 8 India 9 interesting 재미 ...  
11 Teacher! 12 professor 14 husband  
15 grandfather 17 No, ... (it isn't.)  
18 bicycle

### DOWN

1 Taekwondo Competitor 3 ticket counter  
4 Capital City 5 house 10 opposite  
12 Education (as a subject of study) 13 father  
15 grandmother 16 am (morning)

## 8 What did you do?

Look at the following pairs of pictures, and make one sentence for each pair as shown in the example. Translate the sentence into English as well.

Example

Question: 뭐 했어요?

Cue:



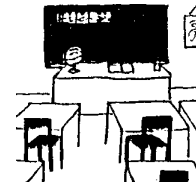
Your Response: 공부한 다음에 학교에 갔어요.

Translation: She studied and after that she went to school.

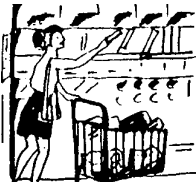
1.



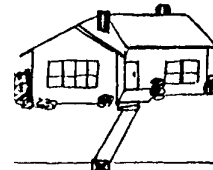
5.



2.



6.



3.



7.



4.



8.



**Language Notes:** • 일 하- = work; • 편지를 쓰- = write a letter • 신문을 읽- = read a newspaper;  
• 음악을 듣- = listen to music;

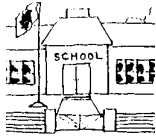
## 9 What did you do?

Look at the following pairs of pictures, and make one sentence for each pair as shown in the example. Translate the sentence into English as well.

Example

Question: 뭐 했어요?

Cue:



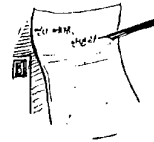
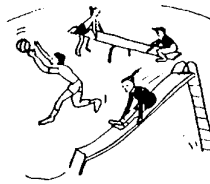
Your Response: 학교에 가기 전에 공부했어요.

Translation: She studied before she went to school.

1.



5.



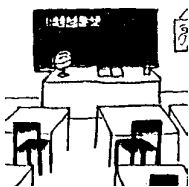
2.



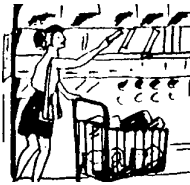
6.



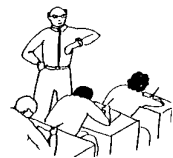
3.



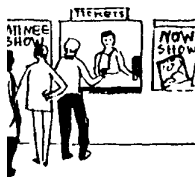
7.



4.



8.



# 16 우리 집이에요.

## 1 Word Squares

All but one of the things/places in the box below can be found in the word square below, if you read vertically or horizontally. Which one is it?

air-conditioner	apartment	balcony
gas cook-top	heater	kitchen sink
microwave oven	oven	standing lamp

발      당      발      문      싱      창

코      가      싱      렌      전      에

니      크      스      오      자      어

대      원      분      네      렌      콘

히      아      파      트      지      창

터      스      텐      드      탁      문

## 2 Memory Game

First, in pairs identify the meaning of each of the following words.

거실	교실	목욕실	세탁실	응접실
침실	화장실	비행기	세탁기	식기세척기
전화기	청소기	냉장고	차고	옷장
찬장	책장			

Second, cover the box above, and fill each of the blanks with a appropriate syllable.

1. bedroom (    )실
2. lounge room (    )실
3. sitting room (    )(    )실
4. bathroom (    )(    )실
5. laundry room (    )(    )실
6. classroom (    )실
7. toilette (    )(    )실
8. vacuum cleaner (    )(    )기
9. washing machine (    )(    )기
10. dish washer (    )(    )(    )(    )기
11. airplane (    )(    )기
12. telephone (    )(    )기
13. wardrobe (    )장
14. cupboard (    )장
15. bookcase (    )장
16. garage (    )고
17. refrigerator (    )(    )고

거	교	기	냉	목
비	세	소	식	옷
욕	응	장	전	접
차	찬	책	척	청
침	탁	행	화	

### 3 Modifying Clauses (1)

This is a fluency drill. Make sentences according to the Example. (Note that normally no TOPICs, ie -은/는 marked NOUNs, occur inside an Adjectival Clause.)

Example	
Task	나는 어제 편지를 받았어요. (이것은 ... 편지예요.) I received a letter yesterday. (This is a/the letter which ...)
Solution	이것은 내가 어제 받은 편지예요. This is a/the letter that I received yesterday.
LANGUAGE NOTES: 나 = <i>I</i> ; 내 + NOUN = <i>my NOUN</i> ; 내가 = <i>I + SUB</i> ; 나는 = <i>I + TOP</i> ; 나를 = <i>I + OBJ</i> , etc	

1. 나는 3 년 전에 편지를 썼어요. (이것은 ... 편지예요.)
2. 태우씨는 홍차를 마셨어요. (이것은 ... 홍차예요.)
3. 나는 어제 백화점에서 CD를 샀어요. (이것은 ... CD예요.)
4. 선영씨는 지난 주말 잡지를 읽었어요. (이것은 ... 잡지예요.)
5. 할머니는 시장에서 생선을 샀어요. (이것은 ... 생선이에요.)
6. 오빠가 사진을 찍었어요. (이것은 ... 사진이에요.)
7. 카일리씨가 잡채를 만들었어요. (이것은 ... 잡채예요.)
8. 어머니가 그림을 그렸어요. (이것은 ... 그림이에요.)
9. 베토벤(Bethoven)은 피아노를 쳤어요. (이것은 ... 피아노예요.)
10. 데이비드씨가 한자를 썼어요. (이것은 ... 한자예요.)
11. 지수씨는 학교를 졸업했어요. (이 학교는 ... 학교예요.)
12. 김선생님은 집을 샀어요. (이 집은 ... 집이에요.)
13. 애니씨는 학교를 다녔어요. (이 학교는 ... 학교예요.)

## 4 Modifying Clauses (2)

This is a fluency drill. Make sentences according to the Example.

Example	
Task	나는 홍차를 마셔요. (이것은 ... 홍차예요.) I drink tea. (This is the tea which ...)
Solution	이것은 내가 마시는 홍차예요. This is the tea that I (normally) drink.

1. 선영씨가 편지를 써요. (이것은 ... 편지예요.)
2. 태우씨는 홍차를 좋아해요. (이것은 ... 홍차예요.)
3. 저는 주말마다 CD를 들어요. (이것은 ... CD예요.)
4. 선영씨가 잡지를 읽어요. (이것은 ... 잡지예요.)
5. 오빠가 여자를 만나요. (이 사람은 ... 여자이에요.)
6. 카일리씨가 잡채를 만들어요. (이것은 ... 잡채예요.)
7. 할머니가 그림을 그리세요. (이것은 ... 그림이에요.)
8. 동생이 피아노를 쳐요. (이것은 ... 피아노예요.)
9. 데이비드씨가 한자를 써요. (이것은 ... 한자예요.)
10. 태우씨는 집에서 살아요. (여기는 ... 집이에요.)
11. 애니씨는 학교를 다녀요. (여기는 ... 학교예요.)
12. 동생이 그 노래를 잘 불러요. (이 노래는 ... 노래예요.)

## 5 Modifying Clauses (3)

This is a fluency drill. Make sentences according to the Example.

Example	
Task	나는 내일 이 책을 읽을 거예요. (이것은 ... 책이에요.) I'm going to read this book tomorrow. (This is the book which ...)
Solution	이것은 내가 내일 읽을 책이에요. This is the book that I'm going to read tomorrow.

1. 선생님은 다음 주에 그 학생을 만날 거예요. (그 학생은 ... 학생이에요.)
2. 제가 이 홍차를 마실 거예요. (이 홍차는 ... 홍차예요.)
3. 언니가 다음 주에 이 자동차를 살 거예요. (이것은 ... 자동차예요.)
4. 동생이 이 음식을 먹을 거예요. (이 음식은 ... 음식이에요.)
5. 동생이 내년부터 이 학교를 다닐 거예요. (이 학교는 ... 학교예요.)
6. 나는 이 음악을 들을 거예요. (이 음악은 ... 음악이에요.)
7. 태우는 다음 학기에 이 과목을 들을 거예요. (이 과목은 ... 과목이에요.)
8. 동생이 이 노래를 부를 거예요. (이 노래는 ... 노래예요.)
9. 오늘 오후에 이 기차를 탈 거예요. (이 기차는 ... 기차예요.)
10. 오빠가 이 책을 살 거예요. (이 책은 ... 책이에요.)
11. 아버지가 내일 이 일을 할 거예요. (이 일은 ... 일이에요.)
12. 애니씨는 잡지를 읽을 거예요. (이것은 ... 잡지예요.)



# 17 엄마를 닮은 것 같아요.

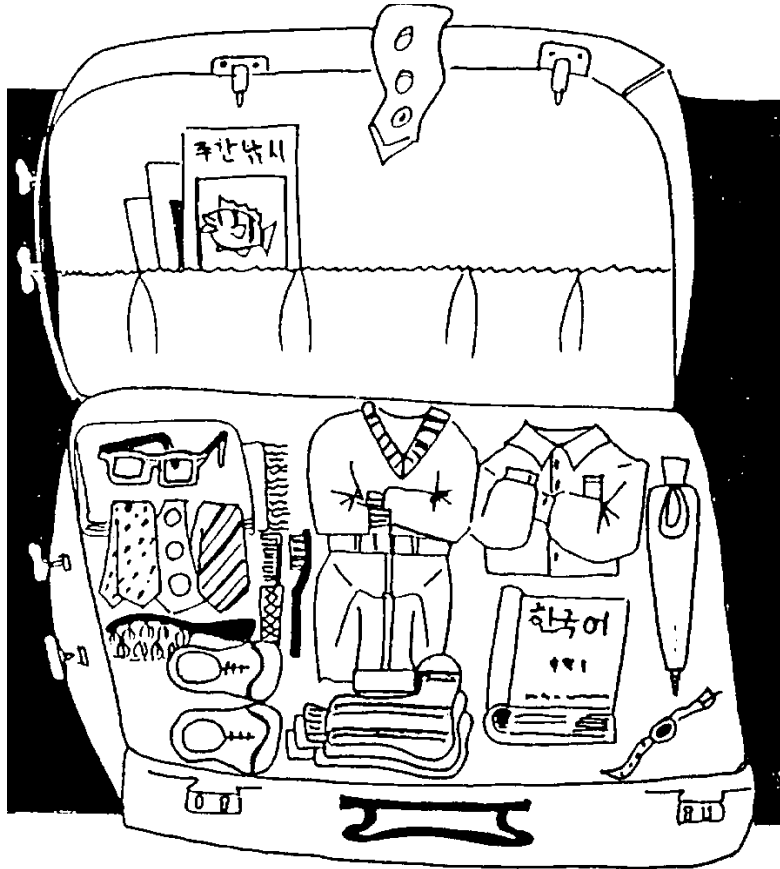
## 1 WORD SQUARE

In the following word square, each accessory or item of clothing except one can be found twice.  
Which one only occurs once?

구	두	한	스	웨	터
모	자	복	속	옷	양
시	켓	치	마	스	말
구	계	양	복	커	시
두	바	안	경	트	계
속	지	넥	드	어	스
옷	자	켓	타	바	신
안	양	말	신	이	지
경	넥	타	이	양	복
한	치	자	스	웨	터
복	마	스	커	트	츠

## 2 What's in the case?

Look at the picture below and list the items in the suitcase by extending the example sentence.



가방 안에는 넥타이도 있고, .....

### 3 Verbs of Wearing

What verb of wearing (see the box below) do we use with each of the following clothing and accessories?

입-	쓰-	신-	하-	끼-	차-	벗-	빼-
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

티셔츠	교복	수영복	넥타이
반지	드레스	모자	반바지
브라우스	속옷	스웨터	스카프
스커트	스타킹	안경	양말
양복	목걸이	와이셔츠	청바지
운동화	원피스	자켓	장갑
시계	짧은 치마	귀걸이	한복

## 4 Colours

Below is a grid comprising articles of clothing (vertical) with colours (horizontal). Ask your fellow student(s) if they have one of the articles listed in one of the colours listed.

	까만색	하얀색	빨간색	노란색	파란색	초록색	밤색	분홍색	회색	오렌지색
바지										
짧은 바지										
운동화										
스카프										
치마										
짧은 치마										
넥타이										
티셔츠										
와이셔츠										
드레스										
자켓										
양복										
모자										
양말										
스웨터										

## 5 Some description verbs

Can you think of any person or thing as example for each of the following description verbs?

---

### Examples

오래되었어요:	The song: 'Yes, Sir. It's my baby.'
작아요:	mouse
길어요:	기차
짧아요:	미니스커트
키가 커요:	마이클 조던

---

- 짧어요
- 어려워요
- 늙었어요
- 낡았어요
- 닳았어요
- 잘 생겼어요
- 잘 못 생겼어요
- 오래되었어요
- 커요
- 키가 커요
- 작아요
- 키가 작아요
- 예뻐요
- 아름다워요
- 짧아요
- 길어요
- 우아해요

## 6 It looks like a ...

Look at the shapes below and discuss what they might represent. No 1 has been done for you.

1.



배 같아요.

2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



## 7 He/She/They seem to ...

Look at the people below and try to guess what they might be doing, using VST - 는 것 같아요. In some cases you may not have a ready answer, in which either use your imagination, or else respond 글썄요, 잘 모르겠어요.

1.



2.



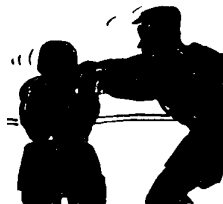
3.



4.



5.



6.



## 8 What's up?

Look at the situations described below and make appropriate comments on them using the cue words plus -것 같아요.

Example: You go outside and the streets are all wet. (비가 오-)

Response: 비가 온 것 같아요.

1. You look for a colleague at work but can't find him. (집에 돌아가-)
2. You see a funeral lantern outside a Korean house, and you know the family's grandmother is old and frail. (할머니가 돌아가시-)
3. You see weeds have overrun a garden. (오래동안 정원 가꾸기를 하지 않-)
4. You are wondering why the children have no appetite at dinner. (과자를 너무 많이 먹-)
5. You hear the thud of a football outside. (아이들이 밖에서 놀-)
6. You expect Mr Chon back at eleven but you see his light go on at 9.30. (일찍 돌아오시-)
7. Your housemate is rolling up his sleeves, and is going over to the sink. (설것이를 하-)
8. You hear a lot of noises from your neighbour's garage. (옆집에서 자동차를 고치-)
9. Bus No 31 comes but one of the people at the bus stop doesn't take it. (다음 버스를 기다리-)
10. You see your friend order Bulgogi whenever you go to a Korean restaurant together.  
(한국음식은 불고기만 알-)

### Language Notes

- 고치- = *repair, fix*
- 기다리- = *wait for*

## 9 When do you wear ...?

Form a small group and ask each other the questions about the items of clothing listed below. To make the exercise go more smoothly, prepare your own answers in advance, and write them in the space provided.

Example	
Cue	양복
Question	양복을 입고 다니세요? (Do you wear a suit? When do you wear a suit?)
Response	아니오, 안 입고 다녀요. 하지만, 결혼식에 갈 때는 양복을 입어요. (No, I don't. But, when I go to a wedding, I do.)

구두

귀걸이

넥타이

드레스

머플러

모자

목걸이

바지

수영복

시계

안경

양복

와이셔츠

운동화

짧은 바지

치마

### LANGUAGE NOTES:

- Remember 언제나, 보통, 자주 가끔 별로 + Neg, 좀처럼 + Neg, 전혀 + Neg, 날마다, 매일, 매달, 일주일에 한 번, etc? Review Pages 94 – 95 in Unit 16.
- A woman's suit can be 양장, and the verb to use with it will be 하-; thus, *I (female) am wearing a suit* would be 양장을 했어요, and *I (generally) wear a suit* 양장을 해요.
- Also, note 결혼식에 갈 때. 결혼식 = wedding ceremony; to say *when I do such and such*, we use ... VST - (으)ㄴ 때; eg 책을 읽을 때 = *when I read books*



## 10 He's wearing red trousers ...

This exercise is to help you practise further describing colours and using some relevant description verbs in Korean. Below is a grid comprising articles of clothing (horizontal) with colours/appearances (vertical). Your task is to look at the people around you, make a cross in the appropriate box where someone is wearing one of the articles listed in one of the colours/appearances listed, and talk to the class about your findings.

	바지	짧은 바지	운동화	목걸이	반지	머플러	치마	티셔츠	자켓	모자	양말	스웨터
검은색												
흰색												
빨간색												
노란색												
파란색												
초록색												
밤색												
회색												
핑크색												
무늬가 있는												
디자인이 예쁜												
시원해 보이는												
따뜻해 보이는												
편안해 보이는												
우아한												
짧아 보이는												

## 11 COMPARISONS

This exercise is designed to help you practice making comparisons in Korean. Read the cues below and make sentences according to the Example.

Example	
Cue	In Korea, Sorak-san (설악산) is commonly recognised as the most beautiful mountain area, more beautiful than even Jiri-san (지리산).
Response	설악산은 지리산보다 아름답지요.

1. David is 1.8m tall, and Ji-Su's 1.77m.
2. Annie's got three brothers and sisters, and Seon-Yeong has four.
3. Bulgogi's delicious, but Galbi's even nicer.
4. Australia is a big country, but China is bigger.
5. Learning Japanese is more difficult than learning Korean (well, at least to some!).
6. Canberra's cleaner than Sydney.
7. And Seoul's noisier than Sydney.
8. New Zealand's closer to Australia than Fiji.
9. My neighbours are quieter than David's.
10. In Australia cricket is more popular than baseball.
11. Korean food is hot, but Thai food is even hotter.
12. This University is older than that one.

# 18 어디서 살 거예요?

## 1 What are you going to buy?

Look at the pictures below and make sentences according to the Example.

Example



Question: 뭘 살거예요?

Response: 야채를 살거예요.

1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



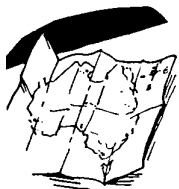
8.



9.



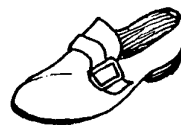
10.



11.



12.



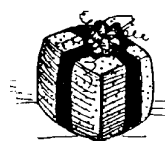
13.



14.



15.



16.



17.



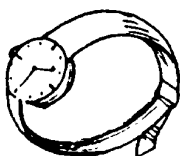
18.



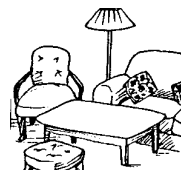
19.



20.



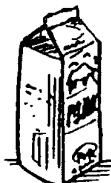
21.



22.



23.



24.



## 2 ... IN ORDER TO ...

Make sentences according to the model.

### Example

Cue: 아버지는 시장에 갔어요. 생선을 샀어요.

Response: 아버지는 생선을 사러 시장에 갔어요.

Translation: Dad went to the market to buy fish.

1. 어머니는 슈퍼마켓에 갔어요. 간장을 샀어요.
2. 태우는 일본에 갔어요. 일본어를 공부했어요.
3. 누나는 터미널에 갔어요. 고속 버스를 탔어요.
4. 어머니는 백화점에 갔어요. 옷을 샀어요.
5. 오빠는 공원에 갔어요. 여자 친구를 만났어요.
6. 지수는 우리 집에 왔어요. 동생과 같이 공부했어요.
7. 언니는 학교에 갔어요. 선생님과 이야기했어요.
8. 애니는 서울역에 갔어요. 수원 가는 기차를 탔어요.
9. 최선생은 고향에 갔어요. 친척을 만났어요.
10. 카일리는 수원에 갔어요. 유명한 수원 갈비를 먹었어요.
11. 형은 커피숍에 걸어갔어요. 오래동안 못 만난 친구를 만났어요.
12. 할아버지는 술집에 갔어요. 친구하고 맥주를 마셨어요.
13. 언니는 한강에 갔어요. 배를 탔어요.

### 3 If ...

Complete the following sentences using the words in the brackets.

Example

Cue: 값이 너무 비싸-; 책을 안 사-

Response: 값이 너무 비싸면 책을 안 살 거예요.

Translation: If the price is too expensive I won't buy the book.

1. 값이 싸-; 그 책을 사-
2. 음식이 너무 맵-; 안 먹-
3. 음식이 맛이 없-; 안 먹-
4. 숙제가 재미 없-; 안 하-
5. 인삼차가 맛이 없-; 홍차를 마시-
6. 택시가 너무 비싸-; 버스로 가-
7. 김선생님이 안 계시-; 기다리-
8. 자동차 값이 너무 비싸-; 오토바이를 사-
9. 이번 주말에 날씨가 좋-; 등산을 하-
10. 돈이 있-; 내년에 한국에 가-
11. 너무 춥-; 학교에 안 가-

## 4 Introductory Statements

Make sentences according to the Example.

### Example

Cue: 버스가 없어요. 택시로 가요.

Response: 버스가 없는데, 택시로 가요.

Translation: There aren't any buses – we'll go by taxi.

1. 불고기가 없어요. 불갈비를 주문해요.
2. 인삼차가 없어요. 홍차를 마셔요.
3. 배가 고파요. 음식점에 갑시다.
4. 두시가 다 됐어요. 교실로 갑시다.
5. 시간 없어요. 택시로 가요.
6. 가방을 사러 왔어요. 싸고 질 좋은 것 있어요?
7. 너무 비싸요. 더 싼 것 없어요?
8. 홍선생님이 지금 안 계세요. 좀 기다리세요.
9. 동대문 시장에서 친구를 만나요. 동대문 시장에는 몇 번 버스를 타고 가요?
10. 한국어 시험이 내일이에요. 어떻게 해요?
11. 비가 와요. 이 우산을 가져 가세요.
12. 딸에게 줄 인형을 사러 왔어요. 예쁜 인형 있어요?
13. 머리가 아파요. 음악을 들어요.

## 5 Conversation ...

Study the conversation below, where Annie is talking to 선영 about going shopping, do a role-play with your fellow student.

- Annie: 선영씨, 저는 내일 남대문시장에 갈 거예요. 남대문시장을 잘 알아요?
- Seon-Yeong: 네, 잘 알아요. 뭘 살 거예요?
- Annie: 옷하고 기념품을 좀 살 거예요.
- Seon-Yeong: 제가 알기로는 외국 사람들이 보통 이태원에서 옷을 사요. 하지만 옷은 남대문이 더 싸요.
- Annie: 그래요? 기념품은요?
- Seon-Yeong: 기념품도 남대문이 싸요.
- Annie: 아, 네. 그런데 서울 사람들은 어디서 쇼핑을 해요?
- Seon-Yeong: 글썄요. 물건에 따라서 여기 저기서 하는 것 같아요.

### NOTES

- 제가 알기로는 ...: This is a useful introductory phrase when giving information. 제가 알기로는 ... corresponds to *As far as I know*, ... and breaks down as follows. 제 = I; 가 = subject marker; 알기 = gerund form of 알-, ie *knowing*; 로 = instrumental particle *by (means of)*. Thus it means literally *By means of what I know*, ...
- 그런데: *by the way*, *That said*, ...
- ... 에 따라서 ...: This phrase corresponds to *According to ...*, and thus 물건에 따라서 ... means *According to the goods (concerned)*.
- 여기 저기: Literally *Here (and) over there ...*



## 6 YOU CAN GET IT AT THE ...

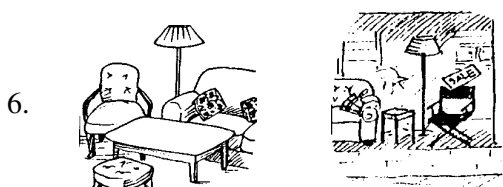
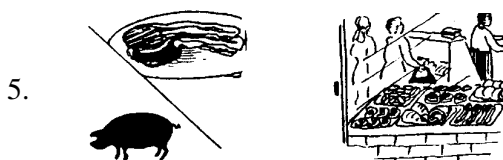
Look at the pictures below and make sentences according to the Example. Do this exercise in pairs.

Example

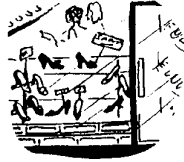


Question: 김치를 사려면 어디에 가요?

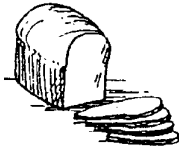
Response: 김치를 사려면 식품점에 가세요.



7.



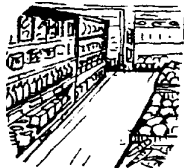
8.



9.



10.



11.



12.



13.



14.



15.



## 7 MAKING CONVERSATION

The situation:

1. You enter a souvenir shop, the shop assistant greets you and asks what she can do for you.
2. You say you're leaving Korea next week, and are looking for souvenirs to take home. You ask what they have.
3. The shop assistant answers that they have bags, fans, dolls, toys, ceramics ...
4. You spot a nice piece of celadon and ask how much it is.
5. The answer is 50,000 won.
6. You say that's a bit expensive and ask if they have anything cheaper.
7. She says they don't have cheap celadon, and then suggests you buy a Korean doll.
8. You hesitate and ask if they sell pictures.
9. She says they do and brings out a folder.
10. You see one you like, remark how nice it is and ask the price.
11. She says it's 10,000 won.
12. You find three more you like and say you'll take all four.
13. She says that will be 40,000 won, and as you pay says that she'll give you this fan with the compliments of the store.
14. You thank her and say good bye.

**NOTE:** fans = 부채

## 19 기분이 어때요?

### 1 BECAUSE ...

Connect the following pairs of sentences using VST + 아/어서 or 해서 ...

Example

Cue: 값이 너무 비쌌어요. 안 샀어요.

Response: 값이 너무 비싸서 안 샀어요.

Translation: Since it was too expensive I didn't buy it.

1. 비가 왔어요. 바닷가에 안 갔어요.
2. 음식이 너무 매웠어요. 못 먹었어요.
3. 날씨가 좋았어요. 공원에 갔어요.
4. 길이 나뻤어요. 차로 못 갔어요.
5. 한국말이 어려워요. 공부를 많이 해요.
6. 음식이 매웠어요. 콜라를 주문했어요.
7. 우리집이 가까웠어요. 우리집으로 갔어요.
8. 공원이 멀었어요. 자동차로 갔어요.
9. 설악산은 경치가 아름다워요. 관광객들이 많아요.
10. 날씨가 너무 추웠어요. 집에 있었어요.
11. 날씨가 더웠어요. 바닷가에 갔어요.
12. 학생이 너무 많아요. 가르치기가 힘들어요.
13. 배가 고팠어요. 다 먹었어요.
14. 커피숍이 시끄러웠어요. 밖으로 나왔어요.
15. 목이 말랐어요. 사이다를 세 병 마셨어요.
16. 이상했어요. 다시 봤어요.
17. 기분이 나뻤어요. 술을 많이 먹었어요.

## 2 You must be ...

Each of the following sentences describes an action or a situation. From the words in brackets, choose a response that most appropriately applies to this situation/action.

### Example

Cue: 어제밤에 잠을 못 잤어요. (피곤해요. 복잡해요. 시원해요.)

Response: 피곤하시겠어요.

Translation: I couldn't sleep last night – You must be tired.

1. 애인이 외국에 갔어요. (기뻐요. 불편해요. 슬퍼요.)
2. 공부를 많이 했지만 시험을 잘 못 봤어요. (재미 있어요. 기뻐요. 기분이 안 좋아요.)
3. 애인이 외국에서 돌아왔어요. (마음에 들어요. 기뻐요. 섭섭해요.)
4. 어제밤에 술을 많이 마셨어요. (머리가 좋아요. 머리가 아파요. 머리가 나빠요.)
5. 한자를 많이 배워요. (쉬워요. 괜찮아요. 힘 들어요.)
6. 어머니가 김치를 만들었어요. (맛있어요. 반가워요. 멋있어요.)
7. 시내에 차가 너무 많아요. (부러워요. 복잡해요. 불안해요.)
8. 친구가 아주 비싼 차를 샀어요. (비싸요. 부러워요. 슬퍼요.)
9. 어제밤부터 지금까지 식사를 못 했어요. (너무 좋아요. 배가 고파요. 피곤해요.)
10. 시험을 잘 봤어요. (신이 났어요. 놀랐어요. 겁이 났어요.)
11. 오늘 열세시간 동안 일을 했어요. (재미 있어요. 배가 고파요. 피곤해요.)
12. 오늘은 물 한잔도 못 마셨어요. (배가 고파요. 아파요. 목이 말라요.)
13. 너무 바빠서 공부할 시간이 없어요. (이상해요. 건강해요. 답답해요.)

### 3 WHY ..?

In this exercise you are given a series of situations involving people, and you are to make third-person questions asking how the situation came about. You can omit the subject/topic 'He/She...'

Example

Cue: Your friend didn't do any homework.

Response: 왜 숙제를 안 했어요?

1. Your friend moved house.
2. Your friend didn't come to class.
3. Your friend couldn't come to your birthday party.
4. Your friend had a headache.
5. Your friend couldn't meet Mr Kim.
6. Your friend didn't enjoy Korea.
7. Your friend went back to Korea.
8. Your friend has decided to study Japanese.
9. Your friend worked until 9.00 p.m.
10. Your friend left her umbrella behind.
11. Your friend went to Busan at the weekend.
12. Your friend didn't sit for the Korean exam.
13. Your friend walked to school today.
14. Your friend sold his car.
15. Your friend likes riding a bike.

#### 4 BECAUSE ...

In this exercise you are given a series of situations. Give explanations using VST 아/어서 or 해서 to explain why you did what you did.

**Example**

Cue: You couldn't go to school today. (머리가 아프-)

Response: 머리가 아파서 오늘 학교에 못 갔어요.

Translation: I couldn't go to school today because I had a headache.

1. You couldn't do your homework. (할 일이 너무 많아요.)
2. You couldn't go to the park. (비가 와요.)
3. You couldn't buy the shoes. (너무 비싸요.)
4. You couldn't eat the food. (배가 아파요.)
5. You couldn't meet your friend. (너무 바빠요.)
6. You didn't eat the fish you ordered. (맛이 없어요.)
7. You walked out of the movie theatre. (영화가 재미없어요.)
8. You went to the beach (instead of to school). (날씨가 너무 덥-)
9. You (left the car and) went on foot. (길이 나쁘-)
10. You didn't write to Sunhui. (주소를 몰랐어요.)
11. You couldn't eat the kimchi. (너무 매워요.)
12. You had another glass of cola. (목이 말랐어요.)
13. You took a bus to the market. (택시가 너무 비싸요.)
14. You didn't go out at all yesterday. (피곤했어요.)

## 5 THE REASON IS THAT ..

Choose the phrase in the box that can most suitably explain the actions in the sentences below.

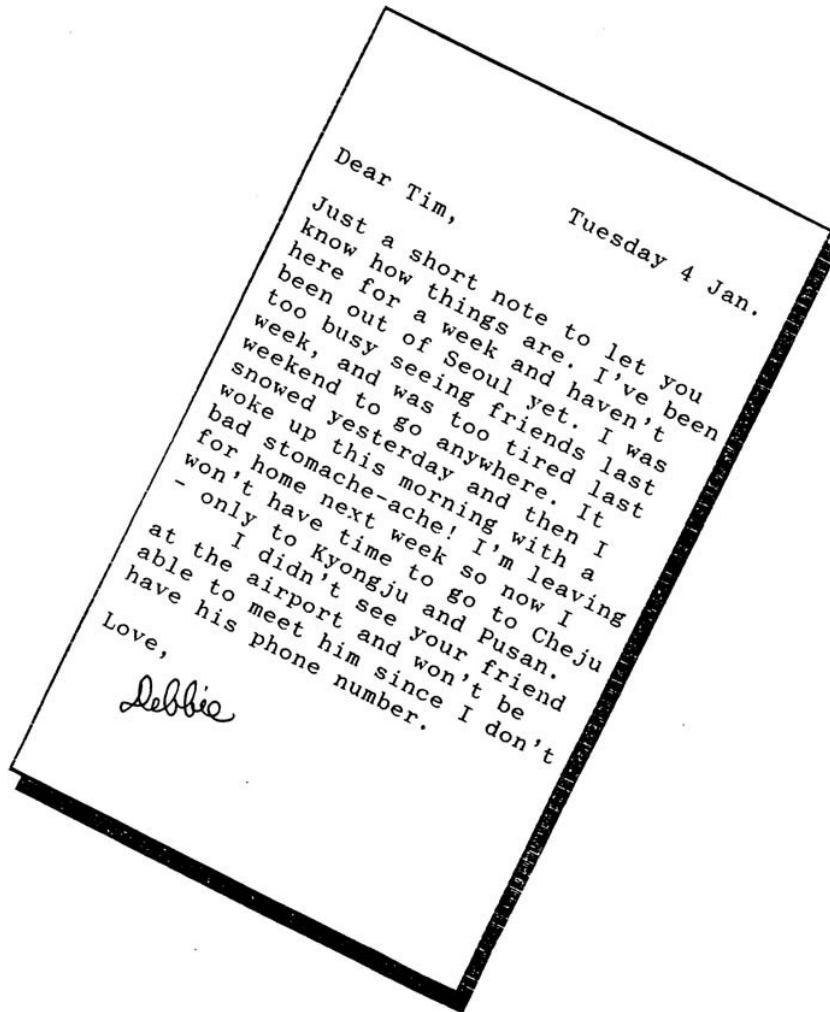
아파서	너무 피곤해서	날씨가 너무 추워서
너무 바빠서	거리가 너무 멀어서	시간이 없어서
너무 불편해서	마음에 들어서	너무 기빠서
너무 어려워서	비가 올 것 같아서	답답해서

1. (                      ) 노래를 했어요.
2. (                      ) 숙제를 못 했어요.
3. (                      ) 아이들이 집안에서 놀았어요.
4. (                      ) 여행을 갔다왔어요.
5. (                      ) 잠을 열시간 잤어요.
6. (                      ) 전화를 못 했어요.
7. (                      ) 집을 샀어요.
8. (                      ) 집을 팔았어요.
9. (                      ) 학교를 못 다녀요.
10. 어머니는 (                      ) 택시로 갔어요.
11. 형은 (                      ) 병원에 갔어요.
12. (                      ) 슈퍼에서 우산을 샀어요.



## 6 Why couldn't Debbie ...?

Below is the text of letter written on a visit to Korea. Read it and answer the questions below.



1. 데비는 왜 지난 주에 서울을 못 떠났어요?
2. 데비는 왜 지난 주말에 서울을 못 떠났어요?
3. 데비는 왜 어제 서울을 못 떠났어요?
4. 데비는 왜 오늘 서울을 못 떠나요?
5. 데비는 왜 제주도에 못 가요?
6. 데비는 왜 팀의 친구를 못 만나요?

**NOTE:** to be tired = 피곤하-; It snows = 눈이 오-; to have a stomach-ache = 배가 아프-

## 7 ON STAGE

In this activity, we practise some of the vocabulary in this Unit by performing simple pantomimes. Basically, you take turns moving about the room performing a series of actions. When you have finished, the other students will be asked to describe what you have done. The pantomimes will basically involve the following actions, but you can add to them if you want to.

I went to the door.	문으로 갔어요.
I opened the door.	문을 열었어요.
I entered the room.	방 안으로 들어왔어요.
I closed the door.	문을 닫았어요.
I sat down.	앉았어요.
I got up.	일어났어요.
I stood there.	섰어요.
I went to the window.	창문으로 갔어요.
I stopped in front of the blackboard.	칠판 앞에서 섰어요.
I went out of the room.	방을 나갔어요.
I went back to my seat.	자리로 돌아갔어요.
I said hello to ...	... 한테 인사를 했어요.
And then ...	그리고 ...

Step 1: Think about the pantomime you are going to act out. Write down your script, making sure that your fellow students will be able to describe what you are about to do.

Step 2: Take turns to leave the classroom and then return and go through your act.

Step 3: After each act, the class describes what they have just scene, saying (in Korean) ‘You came in, you shut the door, you ...’

## 8 WHEN I WAS TEN ...

In this exercise we ask you to recall what you were doing at various times in your past life. Below there are a series of sentences saying “When I was ... years old I was doing such-and-such.” Your task is to complete the sentences that are relevant to your own circumstances.

### Example

You say: 15 살 때 멜버른에서 학교를 다니고 있었어요.

Translation: At the age of fifteen I was going to school in Melbourne.

1. 3 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
2. 6 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
3. 9 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
4. 12 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
5. 15 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
6. 18 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
7. 19 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
8. 20 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
9. 25 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
10. 30 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
11. 35 살 때 .....고 있었어요.
12. 40 살 때 .....고 있었어요.

## 20 한국에서 살기가 어때요?

### 1 Opposites

In the box below are twenty seven Korean adverbs. Each of them, except one, has an adverb that is opposite in meaning. Your task is to identify the one that does not have the opposite.

기쁘게	기쁘게	늦게	덥게
많이	맛 없게	맵게	
멋있게	비싸게	빠리	
쉽게	슬프게	시끄럽게	싸게
안 맵게	어렵게	맛 있게	
익찍	작게	재미 있게	
조용히	짧게	천천히	
멋없게	춥게	크게	재미 없게

## 2 .., aren't you?/isn't it?

Below are a series of situations, and your task is to make appropriate comments using VST-지요. Use a falling intonation pattern to indicate that you expect the other party to confirm your observation.

### Example

Situation: The temperature today is 35 degrees Celsius.

You say: 오늘은 날씨가 덥지요? ↘

1. Your Korean friend is learning French. (프랑스말을 배우기가 ...)
2. You're watching a TV program and your companion yawns. (피곤하-)
3. Your friend tells you he has a long subway ride to work every morning. (불편하-)
4. Your companion eats a tiny portion of Gimchi and leaves the rest. (너무 맵-)
5. Your companion leaves most of the food uneaten. (맛이 없-)
6. Your friend fails the Korean exam. (한국어 공부하기가 어렵-)
7. Another friend passes the Korean exam. (한국어 공부하기가 쉽-)
8. You think the person you're addressing is Mr Park. (박선생님이-)
9. You look around the bookshop, but can't find a Korean-English dictionary. (한영사전이 없-)
10. Your friend has a desk piled high with papers and files. The phone is ringing constantly. (바쁘-)
11. The temperature is around zero. (춥-)
12. Your friend keeps frowning and rubbing her forehead. (머리가 아프-)
13. Your companion recites a list of things of things that have to be done today. (할 일이 많-)

**NOTES:** 피곤하- = tired; 한영사전 = Korean-English dictionary

### 3 .., didn't you?

As in the previous exercise your task is to make appropriate comments using VST-지요. But this time you'll be using a rising intonation pattern and inviting the hearer to agree with you on the point you are making.

#### Example

Situation: You think Tae-U has met Seon-Yeong, and you ask him to check if this is the case.

You say: 태우씨, 설휴영씨를 만났지요? ↗

1. You want to check whether Annie has done her homework.
2. You want to check with the teacher that there's no exam tomorrow.
3. You want to check if Tae-U has read yesterday's paper.
4. You want to check with your fellow student that there's a vocabulary quiz next Monday.
5. You think there's a restaurant inside the railway station.
6. You're checking whether Annie has learned Chinese characters or not.
7. You want to check with the teacher that the lesson finishes at 1.00 pm.
8. You want to check that John went there on foot.
9. You want to check with Seon-Yeong that she's got an appointment at 7.00.
10. Your friend is hanging streamers and laying snack food on the table.
11. You think Kylie's ordered beef spare ribs but want to make sure that she has.
12. You want to check whether Annie worked in the school library.
13. You want to check whether Annie has ever tried naengmyeon.

#### 4 IT SEEMS TO BE ...

Look at the pictures below and suggest what tomorrow's weather will look like.

Example

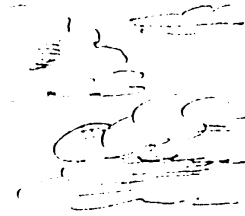


내일은 날씨가 아주 추울 것 같아요.

1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



## 5 What's studying Korean like?

When you talk with Koreans you'll find this is one of the most frequently-asked questions. This exercise is designed to help you respond.

Learning Korean is a task involving various facets and skills:

speaking – 말하기  
listening – 듣기  
reading – 읽기  
writing – 쓰기  
vocabulary – 단어  
grammar – 문법

pronunciation – 발음  
conversation – 회화  
composition – 작문  
listening and (then) speaking – 듣고 말하기  
acquiring vocabulary – 새 단어 배우기  
making sentences – 문장 만들기

Now look at the grid below and describe how you feel.

	아주 어려워요	좀 어려워요	괜찮아요	쉬워요	아주 쉬워요
말하기					
듣기					
읽기					
쓰기					
문법					
발음					
새 단어 배우기					
문장 만들기					
회화					

As an extension exercise, find out how your fellow students feel.

	Name:	Name:	Name:	Name:
말하기				
듣기				
읽기				
쓰기				
문법				
발음				
새 단어 배우기				
문장 만들기				
회화				



## 6 What's the weather like?

Yet another common topic of conversation is the weather. In conversations with Korean people you'll often be asked about Australia's climate. In this exercise, see if you can put together a number of sentences to describe the climate in the area of Australia in which you live, or in the country from which you came, by responding to the following questions.

1. 호주의 기후는 어때요?

호주의 기후는 .....

2. 여름 날씨는 어때요?

여름 날씨는 ..... 고 .....

3. 여름에 비가 많이 와요?

여름에 비가 .....

4. 겨울 날씨는 어때요?

겨울 날씨는 ..... 고 .....

5. 겨울에 눈이 와요?

겨울에 눈이 .....

And from the description of Korea's climate in this Unit can you describe Korea's climate by responding to the same five questions?

1. 한국의 기후는 어때요?

한국의 기후는 .....

2. 여름 날씨는 어때요?

여름 날씨는 ..... 고 .....

3. 여름에 비가 많이 와요?

여름에 비가 .....

4. 겨울 날씨는 어때요?

겨울 날씨는 ..... 고 .....

5. 겨울에 눈이 와요?

겨울에 눈이 .....

## 7 FILL IN THE MISSING WORDS

In the conversation below Yongsu is asking Robert about his accommodation. Your task is to supply the missing words in the conversation from the words in the box below.

Y: 로버트씨, 로버트씨는 집이 ( )예요?

R: 신촌인데요 ... 신촌역 근처를 잘 ( )?

Y: 네, ( ) 알아요. 그런데 지금 친구하고 같이 ( ),  
아니면 한국 ( )하고 같이 살아요?

R: 한국 가족하고 ( ) 살아요. 그 집 아들은 제  
( )인데, 지금 우리 ( )에서 ( ). ( ).  
그런데, 철수씨는 ( )이 어디예요?

Y: 마포 아세요?

R: 글썄요 ... 아, 여의도 쪽에 ( )? 신촌에서 별로 안  
멀지요?

Y: 네, 맞아요. ( ) 한번 놀러 오세요.

R: 네, 그래요.

가족

같이

공부해요

나라

살아요

시간 있을 때

아세요

어디

유학생이에요

있지요

조금

집

친구

## 8 Making Conversation

The situation: You're in Seoul, and you are riding in a taxi ...

1. The taxi driver starts a conversation by asking where you come from.

.....

2. You respond.

.....

3. He then asks you how you find living in Korea.

.....

4. You say you like it. You like the food and people are kind to you, but because you don't speak Korean well, you find it inconvenient from time to time.

.....

5. He asks you where you learnt Korean.

.....

6. You say you learnt at the University of New South Wales in Sydney, Australia.

.....

7. He responds with interests! He asks if you had any Korean teachers.

.....

8. You say yes.

.....

9. He asks if you find Korean difficult.

.....

10. You say that speaking Korean is O.K. but understanding what people say is difficult.

.....

